

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date  
23 December 2004 (23.12.2004)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
**WO 2004/110992 A2**

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>7</sup> :	C07D	GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NA, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.
(21) International Application Number:	PCT/US2004/017056	
(22) International Filing Date:	28 May 2004 (28.05.2004)	
(25) Filing Language:	English	
(26) Publication Language:	English	
(30) Priority Data:	60/476,662	6 June 2003 (06.06.2003) US
(63) Related by continuation (CON) or continuation-in-part (CIP) to earlier application:	US	60/476,662 (CIP)
	Filed on	6 June 2003 (06.06.2003)
(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):	3M INNOVATIVE PROPERTIES COMPANY [US/US]; 3M Center, Post Office Box 33427, Saint Paul, MN 55133-3427 (US).	
(72) Inventors; and		
(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only):	LINDSTROM, Kyle, J. [US/US]; Post Office Box 33427, Saint Paul, MN 55133-3427 (US). DRESSEL, Luke, T. [US/US]; Post Office Box 33427, Saint Paul, MN 55133-3427 (US). BONK, Jason, D. [US/US]; Post Office Box 33427, Saint Paul, MN 55133-3427 (US).	
(74) Agents:	ERSFELD, Dean, A. et al.; Office of Intellectual Property Counsel, Post Office Box 33427, Saint Paul, MN 55133-3427 (US).	
(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available):	AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NA, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW, ARIPO patent (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG)	

Declarations under Rule 4.17:

- as to applicant's entitlement to apply for and be granted a patent (Rule 4.17(ii)) for the following designations AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NA, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW, ARIPO patent (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG)
- as to the applicant's entitlement to claim the priority of the earlier application (Rule 4.17(iii)) for all designations

Published:

- without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

A2

WO 2004/110992 A2

(54) Title: PROCESS FOR IMIDAZO[4,5-C] PYRIDIN-4-AMINES

(57) Abstract: A process and intermediates for preparing 1*<sub>i</sub>*H*<sub>i</sub>*-imidazo[4,5-*<sub>i</sub>*c*<sub>i</sub>*]pyridin-4-amines are disclosed. The process includes providing a 7*<sub>i</sub>*H*<sub>i</sub>*-imidazo[4,5-*<sub>i</sub>*c*<sub>i</sub>*]tetrazolo[1,5-*<sub>i</sub>*a*<sub>i</sub>*]pyridine and converting a 7*<sub>i</sub>*H*<sub>i</sub>*-imidazo[4,5-*<sub>i</sub>*c*<sub>i</sub>*]tetrazolo[1,5-*<sub>i</sub>*a*<sub>i</sub>*]pyridine to a 1*<sub>i</sub>*H*<sub>i</sub>*-imidazo[4,5-*<sub>i</sub>*c*<sub>i</sub>*]pyridin-4-amine.

PROCESS FOR IMIDAZO[4,5-*c*]PYRIDIN-4-AMINES

5

## FIELD

This invention relates to processes for preparing 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amines and to intermediates for use in preparing 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amines.

10

## BACKGROUND

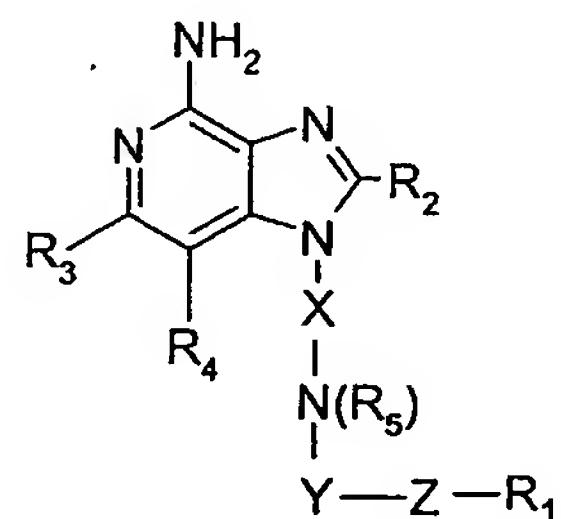
There has been a major effort in recent years to prepare and find compounds that modulate the immune system. Certain 1*H*-imidazopyridin-4-amine compounds useful as immune response modifiers and methods for their preparation are described, for example, in United States Patent Nos. 5,446,153; 5,494,916; 5,644,063; 6,525,064; 6,545,016; and 15 6,545,017, International Publication No. WO 02/46194, and U.S. Patent Publication No. US 2004/0010007.

However, despite these developments, there is a continuing need for useful, alternative processes and intermediates for preparing immune response modifying imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amines.

20

## SUMMARY

It has now been found that 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compounds of the Formula I



25

I

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, wherein

X is alkylene or alkenylene;

Y is -CO-, -CS-, or -SO<sub>2</sub>-;

Z is a bond, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-CO-, or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-SO<sub>2</sub>-; with the proviso that when Y is -SO<sub>2</sub>- then Z is a bond or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-;

5 R<sub>1</sub> is aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, alkyl or alkenyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:

-alkyl;

-alkenyl;

-aryl;

10 -heteroaryl;

-heterocyclyl;

-substituted cycloalkyl;

-substituted aryl;

-substituted heteroaryl;

15 -substituted heterocyclyl;

-O-alkyl;

-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;

-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;

-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;

20 -O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;

-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;

-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;

-COOH;

-CO-O-alkyl;

25 -CO-alkyl;

-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;

-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;

-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;

-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;

30 -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;

-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;

-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;

- (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;
  - (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-alkyl;
  - (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-aryl;
  - 5 - (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted aryl;
  - (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-heteroaryl;
  - (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted heteroaryl;
  - P(O)(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>;
  - N<sub>3</sub>;
  - 10 - halogen;
  - haloalkyl;
  - haloalkoxy;
  - CO-haloalkyl;
  - CO-haloalkoxy;
  - 15 - NO<sub>2</sub>;
  - CN;
  - OH;
  - SH; and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;
- R<sub>2</sub> is selected from:
- 20 - hydrogen;
  - alkyl;
  - alkenyl;
  - aryl;
  - substituted aryl;
  - 25 - heteroaryl;
  - substituted heteroaryl;
  - alkylene-O-alkyl;
  - alkylene-S-alkyl;
  - alkylene-O-aryl;
  - 30 - alkylene-S-aryl;
  - alkylene-O-alkenyl;
  - alkylene-S-alkenyl; and

-alkyl or alkenyl substituted by one or more substituents selected

from:

5

- OH;
- halogen;
- N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
- CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
- CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
- SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;

10

- NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
- NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
- NR<sub>6</sub>-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
- CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
- CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

15

- N<sub>3</sub>;
- aryl;
- substituted aryl;
- heteroaryl;
- substituted heteroaryl;
- heterocyclyl;

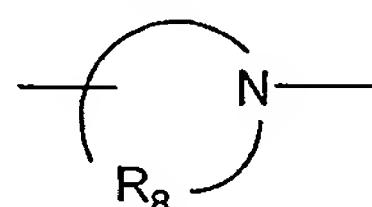
20

- substituted heterocyclyl;
- CO-aryl;
- CO-(substituted aryl);
- CO-heteroaryl; and
- CO-(substituted heteroaryl);

25

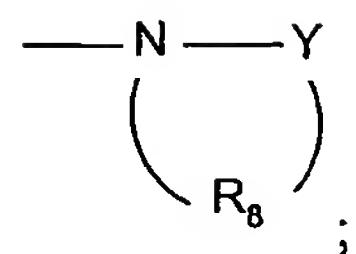
R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino and alkylthio;

R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure



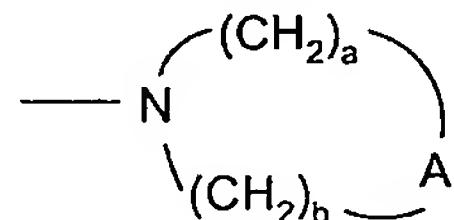
30

or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, and Z is a bond, then R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

$R_7$  is H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or when  $R_1$  is alkyl, Z is  $-N(R_7)-$ , and  $R_7$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms,  $R_7$  and  $R_1$  can join to form a ring having the structure

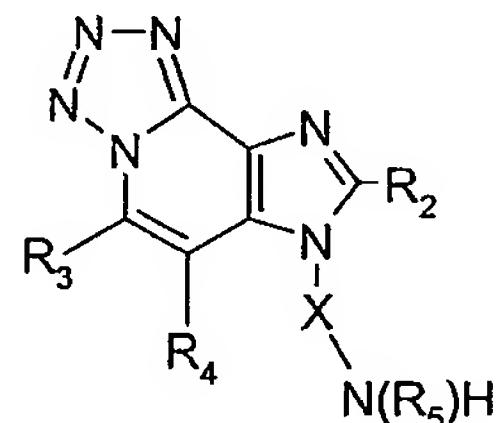


wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2-</sub>, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 6 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7; and

10 R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene;

can be prepared by a process (I) comprising the steps of:

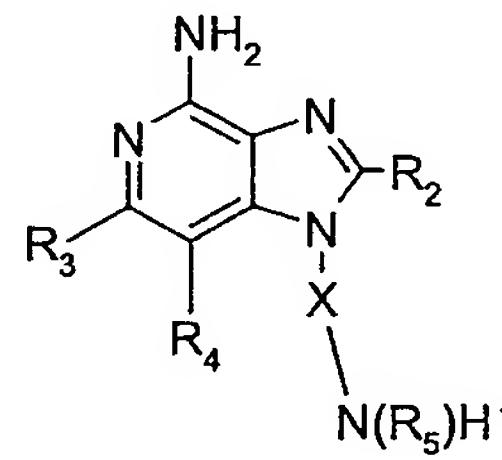
providing a compound of the Formula VIII



VIII

15 wherein X, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above;

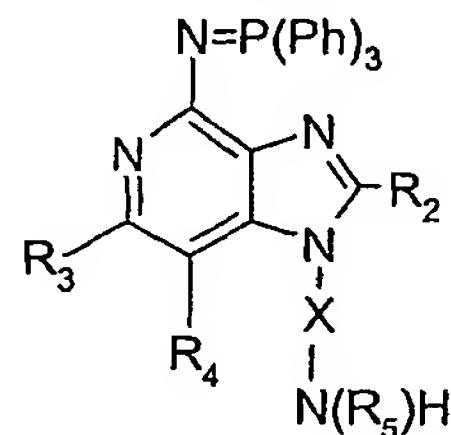
removing the tetrazolo ring from the compound of Formula VIII to provide a compound of Formula X



X

20 wherein X, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above; and

reacting the compound of Formula X with a compound selected from  $R_1\text{-C(O)Cl}$ ,  $R_1(R_7)\text{N-C(O)Cl}$ ,  $\text{Cl-R}_8\text{-C(O)Cl}$ ,  $R_1\text{-C(O)OC(O)-R}_1$ ,  $R_1(R_7)\text{N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R}_7\text{)R}_1$ ,  $R_1\text{-N=C=O}$ ,  $R_1\text{-C(O)-N=C=O}$ ,  $R_1\text{-S(O)}_2\text{-N=C=O}$ ,  $R_1\text{-N=C=S}$ ,  $R_1\text{-C(O)-N=C=S}$ ,  $R_1\text{-S(O)}_2\text{-N=C=S}$ ,  $R_1\text{-S(O)}_2\text{Cl}$ ,  $\text{Cl-R}_8\text{-S(O)}_2\text{Cl}$ ,  $R_1\text{-S(O)}_2\text{OS(O)}_2\text{-R}_1$ , and  $R_1(R_7)\text{N-S(O)}_2\text{Cl}$ ,  
5 wherein  $R_1$ ,  $R_7$ , and  $R_8$  are as defined above, to provide a compound of Formula I; wherein the tetrazolo ring is removed from the compound of Formula VIII by (a) reductively removing the tetrazolo ring or (b) reacting the compound of Formula VIII with triphenylphosphine to provide an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula IX



10

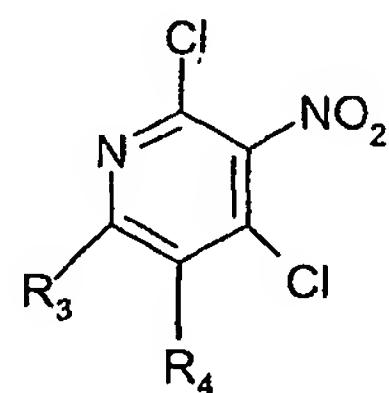
IX

wherein  $X$ ,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ , and  $R_5$  are as defined above; and hydrolyzing the *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula IX.

In some embodiments, the process (I) further comprises any one or more steps selected from steps (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v), and (vi):

15

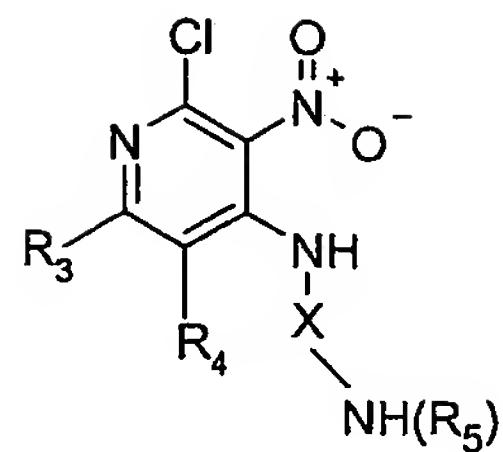
(i) providing a compound of the Formula II



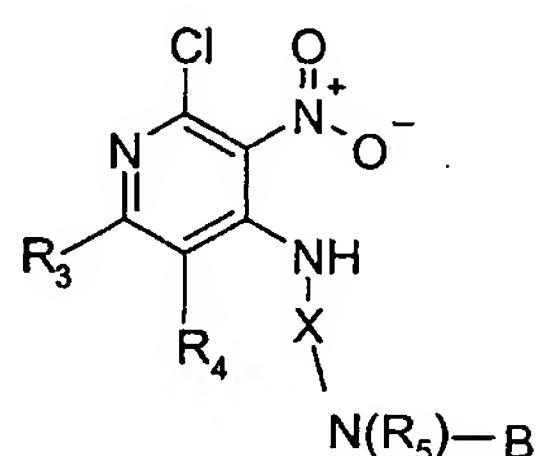
II

wherein  $R_3$  and  $R_4$  are as defined above;

20 (ii) reacting the compound of Formula II (a) with an amine of the formula  $N(R_5)\text{-X-NH}_2$  to provide a compound of Formula XIII

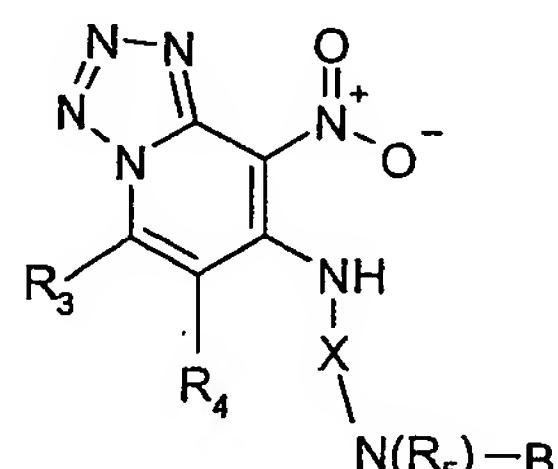


wherein X, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above; and protecting the -N(R<sub>5</sub>)- amino group with a protecting group B, or (b) with an amine of the formula B-N(R<sub>5</sub>)-X-NH<sub>2</sub>, to provide  
5 a compound of the Formula III



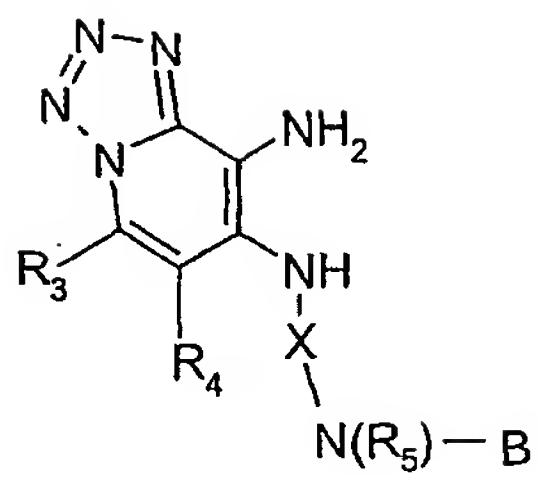
wherein X, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above, and B is a protecting group for the -N(R<sub>5</sub>)- amino group;

- 10 (iii) reacting the compound of Formula III with an alkali metal azide to provide a compound of Formula IV



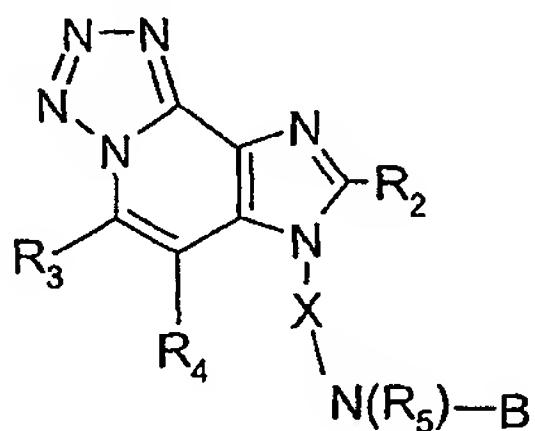
wherein B, X, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above;

- 15 (iv) reducing the compound of Formula IV to provide a compound of the Formula V



wherein B, X, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above;

- 5 (v) reacting a compound of Formula V (a) with a carboxylic acid of the formula R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide, R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>3</sub>, and R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>(O(O=)C-alkyl); or a mixture thereof, or (b) with an imide of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub>, wherein R<sub>2</sub> is as defined above and each alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms; to provide a compound of the Formula VII

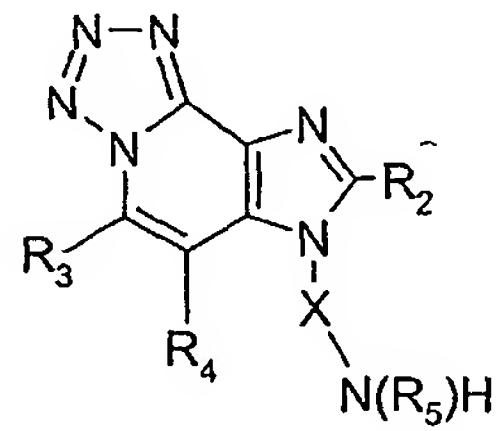


10

VII

wherein B, X, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above; and

- 15 (vi) removing the amine protecting group from the compound of Formula VII to provide a compound of the Formula VIII



15

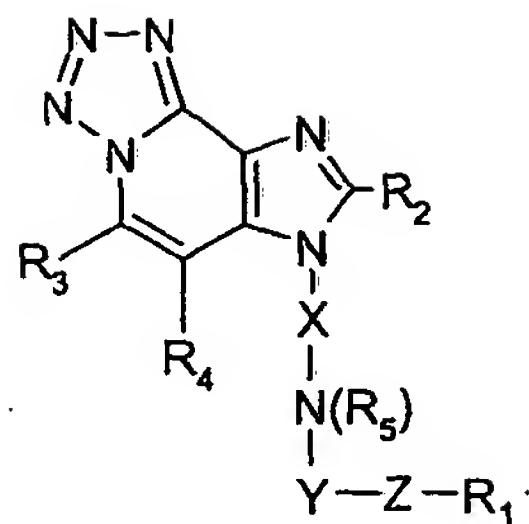
VIII

wherein X, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above.

In another embodiment, 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compounds of the Formula I described above and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, can be prepared by a process (II) comprising the steps of:

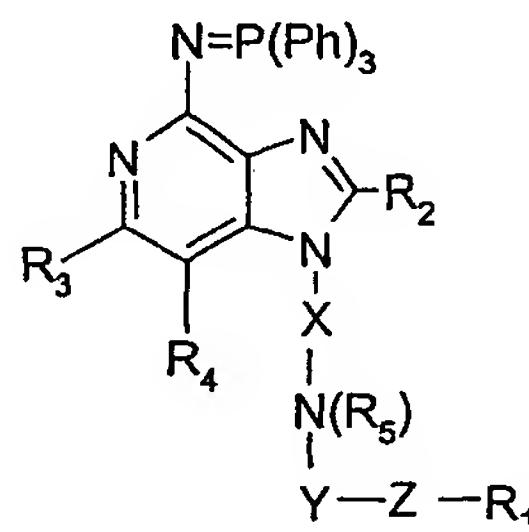
20

providing a compound of Formula XI



wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y, and Z are as described above; and

removing the tetrazolo ring from the compound of Formula XI to provide a  
5 compound of Formula I; wherein the tetrazolo ring is removed from the compound of  
Formula XI by (a) reductively removing the tetrazolo ring or (b) reacting the compound of  
Formula XI with triphenylphosphine to provide an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of  
Formula XII



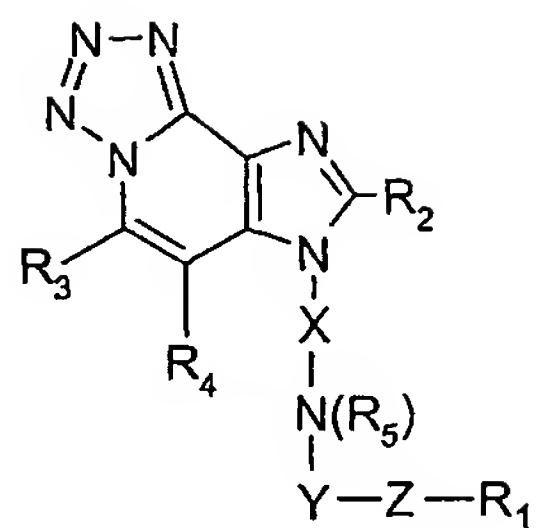
10

wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y, and Z are as described above; and hydrolyzing the *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula XII.

In some embodiments, the process (II) further comprises any one or more steps selected from steps (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v), and (vi) described above and (viii):

15

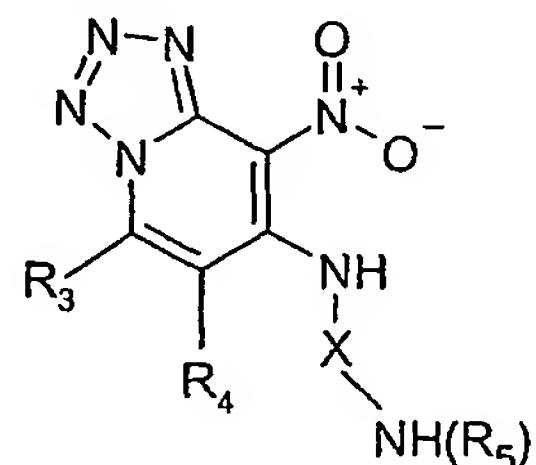
(viii) providing a compound of Formula VIII described above; and  
reacting the compound of Formula VIII with a compound selected from  
R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>,  
R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O,  
R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl,  
20 R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, and R<sub>8</sub> are as defined above,  
to provide a compound of Formula XI



wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y, and Z are as defined above.

In some embodiments, the process (II) further comprises any one or more steps selected from steps (i), (ii), and (iii) described above, and (x), (xi), (xii), and (xiii):

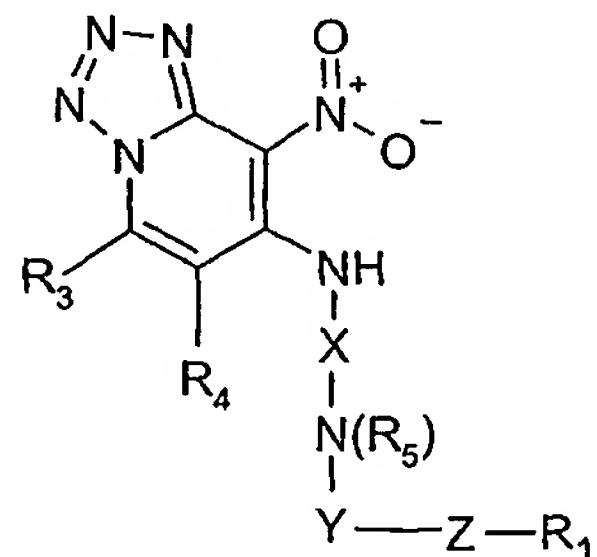
- (x) providing a compound of Formula IV described above; and  
removing the amine protecting group from the compound of Formula IV to provide a compound of the Formula XIV



10 XIV

wherein X, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above;

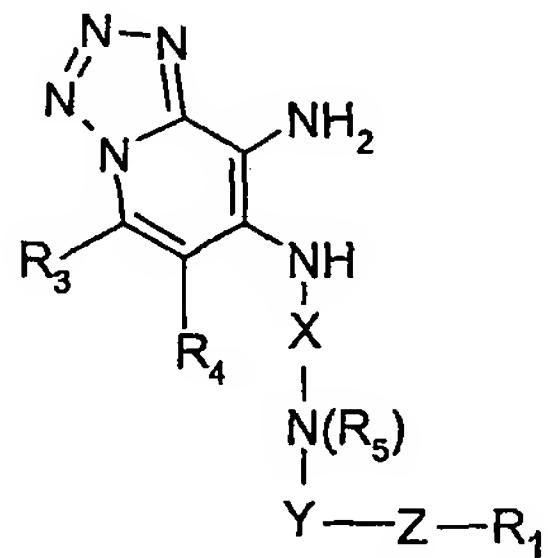
- (xi) reacting the compound of Formula XIV with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, and R<sub>8</sub> are as defined above, to provide a compound of Formula XV



## XV

wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y, and Z are as described above;

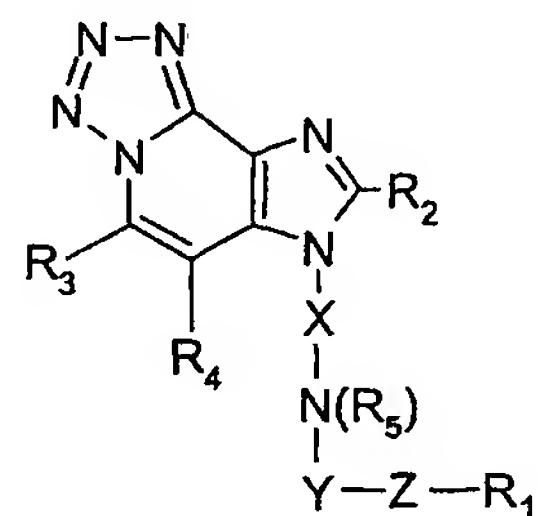
(xii) reducing the compound of Formula XV to provide a compound of the Formula XVI



## XVI

wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y, and Z are as described above; and

(xiii) reacting a compound of Formula XVI (a) with a carboxylic acid of the formula R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide, 10 R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>3</sub>, and R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>(O(O=)C-alkyl); or a mixture thereof, or (b) with an imidate of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub>, wherein R<sub>2</sub> is as defined above and each alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms; to provide a compound of the Formula XI



## XI

15 wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y, and Z are as described above.

In some embodiments the above processes further comprise the step of isolating the compound of Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20 In another aspect this invention provides intermediates of the Formulas IV-VIII, XI, XIV, XV, and XVI, which are useful in the preparation of the compounds of Formula I, for example, in the processes described herein.

As used herein, "a," "an," "the," "at least one," and "one or more" are used interchangeably.

The terms "comprising" and variations thereof do not have a limiting meaning where these terms appear in the description and claims.

The above summary of the present invention is not intended to describe each disclosed embodiment or every implementation of the present invention. The description that follows more particularly exemplifies illustrative embodiments. Guidance is also provided herein through lists of examples, which can be used in various combinations. In each instance, the recited list serves only as a representative group and should not be interpreted as an exclusive list.

10

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF ILLUSTRATIVE EMBODIMENTS OF THE INVENTION

Reaction Scheme I illustrates a process of the invention wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y and Z are as defined above.

In step (1) of Reaction Scheme I a 2,4-dichloro-3-nitropyridine of Formula II is reacted with an amine of formula B-N(R<sub>5</sub>)-X-NH<sub>2</sub>, wherein B is a protecting group for the -N(R<sub>5</sub>)- amino group, examples of which include but are not limited to *t*-butoxycarbonyl, *iso*-butoxycarbonyl, benzyloxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, methoxycarbonyl, benzoyl, pivaloyl, propionyl, acetyl, and phthalimide; and R<sub>5</sub> and X are as defined above, to provide a 2-chloro-3-nitropyridine of Formula III. The reaction is preferably carried out by adding the amine to a solution of a compound of Formula II in a suitable solvent such as *N,N*-dimethylformamide in the presence of a tertiary amine such as triethylamine, and optionally heating. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

Many 2,4-dichloro-3-nitropyridines of the Formula II are known and can be readily prepared using known synthetic methods. (See, for example, Dellaria et al, U.S. Pat. No. 6,525,064 and the references cited therein.)

Many amines of formula B-N(R<sub>5</sub>)-X-NH<sub>2</sub> are known and others can be readily prepared using known synthetic methods. For example, a diamine, such as ethylenediamine, can be reacted with di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate in a suitable solvent, such as ethyl acetate and the product isolated by conventional methods.

Alternatively, step 1 can be carried out by i) reacting a 2,4-dichloro-3-nitropyridine of Formula II with an amine of formula  $\text{HN}(\text{R}_5)\text{-X-NH}_2$  and then ii) attaching the protecting group B to provide a 2-chloro-3-nitropyridine of Formula III. Step i) is preferably carried out by adding the amine to a solution of a compound of Formula II in a suitable solvent such as *N,N*-dimethylformamide in the presence of a tertiary amine such as triethylamine, and optionally heating. Step ii) is carried out using conventional methods for protecting an amine, for example, by reacting the amine intermediate with di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate in a suitable solvent, such as tetrahydrofuran, in the presence of sodium hydroxide or reacting the amine intermediate with acetyl chloride in a suitable solvent, such as dichloromethane, in the presence of triethylamine.

In step (2) of Reaction Scheme I a 2-chloro-3-nitropyridine of Formula III is reacted with an alkali metal azide to provide an 8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula IV. The reaction can be carried out by combining the compound of Formula III with an alkali metal azide, for example, sodium azide, in a suitable solvent such as anhydrous *N,N*-dimethylformamide, and heating to about 50 – 90 °C, optionally in the presence of ammonium chloride. Alternatively, the reaction can be carried out by combining the compound of Formula III with an alkali metal azide, for example, sodium azide, in a suitable solvent such as 90/10 acetonitrile/H<sub>2</sub>O in the presence of cerium III chloride, preferably cerium III chloride heptahydrate, optionally with heating, for example, at reflux. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

In step (3) of Reaction Scheme I an 8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula IV is reduced to provide a tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine-7,8-diamine of Formula V. The reduction can be carried out using a conventional heterogeneous hydrogenation catalyst, for example, platinum on carbon or palladium on carbon. The reaction can conveniently be carried out on a Parr apparatus in a suitable solvent such as ethanol, isopropanol, acetonitrile or toluene. Alternatively, Ni<sub>2</sub>B can be generated in situ from sodium borohydride and NiCl<sub>2</sub> in the presence of methanol. The compound of Formula IV can be added to the reducing agent solution to effect reduction of the nitro group. When the compound of Formula IV contains an alkenyl or alkenylene moiety, the Ni<sub>2</sub>B reducing agent can be used without reducing the alkenyl or alkenylene moiety. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

In step (4) of Reaction Scheme I a tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine-7,8-diamine of Formula V is reacted with a carboxylic acid of the formula R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide, R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>3</sub>, and R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>(O(O=)C-alkyl); or a mixture thereof; or with an imidate of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub>; wherein R<sub>2</sub> is as defined above and each alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms, to provide a 7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula VII. When the carboxylic acid or equivalent thereof is used the reaction can be run in the absence of solvent or in an inert solvent such as, for example, toluene. The reaction may be run in the presence of cyclization conditions, which include sufficient heating (e.g., about 80-150 °C) to drive off any alcohol or water formed as a byproduct of the reaction, and optionally, in the presence of a catalyst such as pyridine hydrochloride. For example, an orthoester of the formula R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>3</sub>, (e.g., triethylorthoacetate) is combined with a tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine-7,8-diamine of Formula V in toluene in the presence of pyridine hydrochloride and heated at the reflux temperature. When the imidate is used the reaction can be run in a suitable solvent such as 1,2-dichloroethane at an elevated temperature, for example, about 60 °C. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

Alternatively, step 4 can include steps (4a) and (4b) of Reaction Scheme I. In step (4a) a tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine-7,8-diamine of Formula V is reacted with a carboxylic acid of the formula R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H, the corresponding acyl halide, or a mixture thereof, wherein R<sub>2</sub> is as defined above, to provide an *N*-[tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-8-yl]amide of Formula VI. The reaction can be run in an inert solvent such as toluene, dichloromethane, acetonitrile, or pyridine at a reduced temperature, for example about 0 °C. For example, an acyl halide can be added to a solution of the compound of Formula V in dichloromethane at about 0 °C in the presence of triethylamine. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

In step (4b) of Reaction Scheme I an *N*-[tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-8-yl]amide of Formula VI is cyclized to provide a 7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula VII. The reaction can be run at an elevated temperature, such as a reflux temperature, sufficient to drive off any water formed as a by-product of the reaction. Optionally a catalyst such as pyridine hydrochloride can be included. The reaction can be run in the absence of a solvent or in an inert solvent, for example, a solvent having a boiling point of about 80 °C to about 150 °C, preferably at least about 100 °C, (e.g., toluene, pyridine).

Alternatively, the reaction can be run in a mixture of water and a lower alkanol such as ethanol in the presence of a base such as sodium hydroxide. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

In step (5) of Reaction Scheme I the amine protecting group of a *7H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula VII is removed to provide a *7H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula VIII. The reaction can be run by treating a solution of a *7H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula VII in a suitable solvent such as, for example, dichloromethane or ethanol with an acid, for example, hydrochloric acid or trifluoroacetic acid, optionally with heating. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

In step (6) of Reaction Scheme I, the tetrazolo ring is reductively removed from a *7H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula VIII to provide a *1H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine of Formula X. The reaction can be carried out by reacting the *7H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula VIII with hydrogen in the presence of a catalyst and an acid. The reaction can be conveniently run in a Parr apparatus with a suitable catalyst, such as platinum IV oxide, and a suitable acid, such as trifluoroacetic acid or concentrated hydrochloric acid. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

Alternatively, steps (6a) and (6b) can be used in place of step (6). In step (6a) of Reaction Scheme I a *7H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula VIII is reacted with triphenylphosphine to form an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula IX. The reaction with triphenylphosphine can be run in a suitable solvent such as toluene or 1,2-dichlorobenzene under an atmosphere of nitrogen with heating, for example at the reflux temperature.

In step (6b) of Reaction Scheme I an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula IX is hydrolyzed to provide a *1H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine of Formula X. The hydrolysis can be carried out by general methods well known to those skilled in the art, for example, by heating in a lower alkanol in the presence of an acid such as hydrochloric acid. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods as the compound of Formula X or as a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

The use of (6a) and (6b) is preferred when protection of a *7H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula VIII from the reductive conditions of step (6) is

desired. For example, readily reducible moieties such as alkenyl and heteroaryl groups can be protected from reduction by using steps (6a) and (6b) in place of step (6).

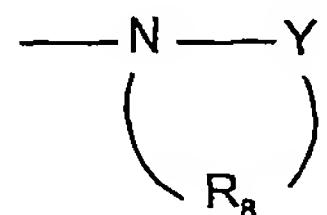
In step (7) of Reaction Scheme I a *1H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine of Formula X is reacted with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, 5 R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl to provide a compound of Formula I. For example, an acid chloride of formula R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl or R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, or an acid anhydride of formula R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub> or R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub> is reacted with 10 a *1H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine of Formula X to provide a *1H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl amide or urea, each being a subgenus of Formula I wherein Y is -CO- and Z is a bond or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-. The reaction is preferably carried out by adding the acid chloride or acid anhydride to a solution of a *1H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine of Formula X in a suitable solvent such as dichloromethane or acetonitrile in the presence of a base such as 15 triethylamine. The reaction can be run at a reduced temperature (for example, 0°C) or at ambient temperature. The product or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof can be isolated using conventional methods.

In another example, a *1H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine of Formula X is reacted with an isocyanate of formula R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, or R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, or with 20 an isothiocyanate of formula R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, or R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, to provide a *1H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl urea or thiourea, each being a subgenus of Formula I wherein Y is -CO- or -CS-, and Z is -(NH)-, -NH-C(O)-, or -NH-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-. The reaction is preferably carried out by adding the isocyanate or isothiocyanate to a solution 25 of a compound of Formula X in a suitable solvent such as dichloromethane at a reduced temperature (for example, 0°C). The product or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof can be isolated using conventional methods.

In another example, a *1H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine of Formula X is reacted with a sulfonyl chloride of formula R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl or R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, or a sulfonic anhydride of formula R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub> to provide a *1H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl 30 sulfonamide or sulfamide, each being a subgenus of Formula I wherein Y is -SO<sub>2</sub>-, and Z is a bond or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-. The reaction is preferably carried out by adding the sulfonyl chloride

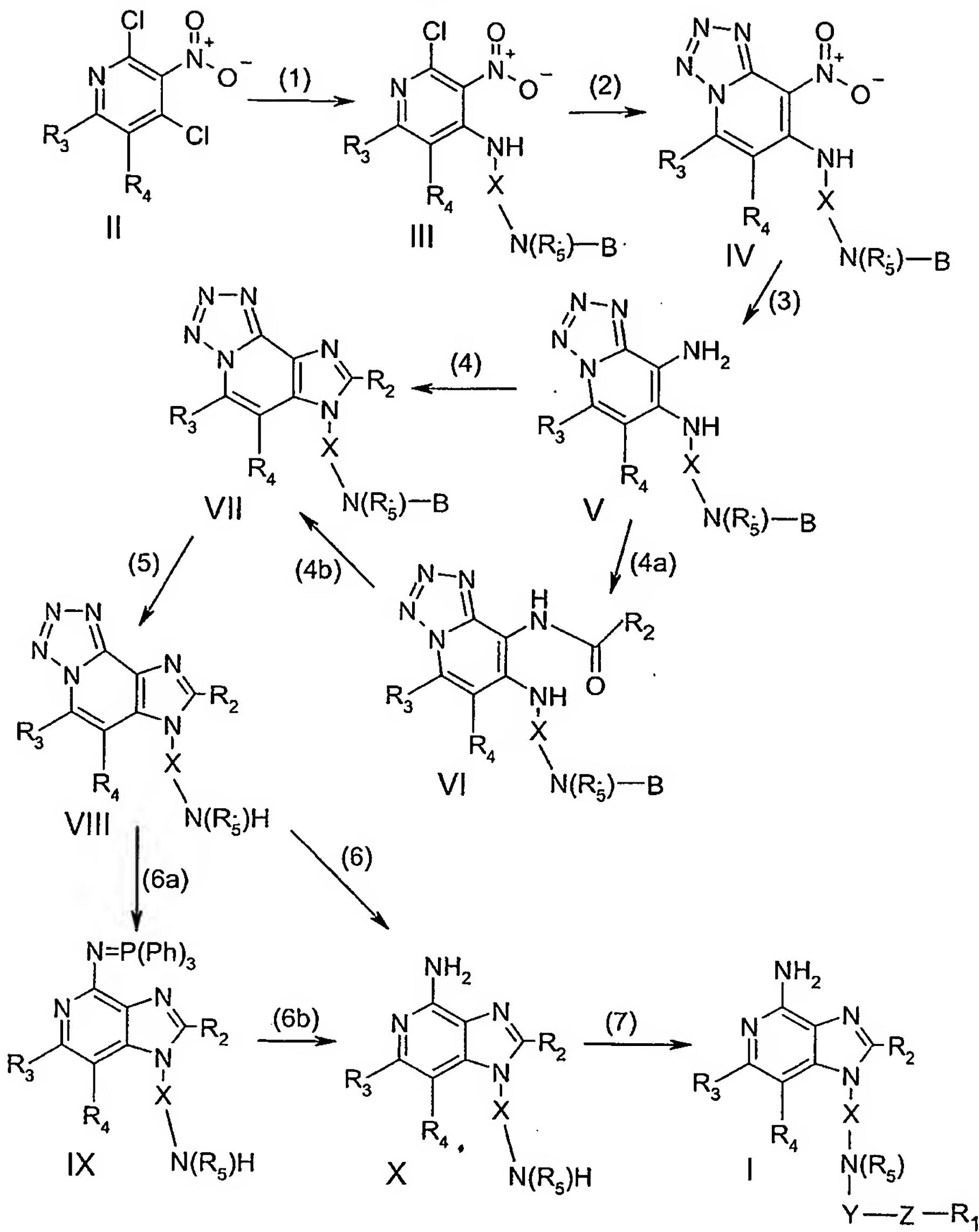
or sulfonic anhydride to a solution of a compound of Formula X in a suitable solvent such as dichloromethane in the presence of a base such as triethylamine.

In another example, a  $1H$ -imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine of Formula X is reacted with a chloroalkanoyl chloride or chloroalkanesulfonyl chloride compound of formula Cl-  
5  $R_8\text{-C(O)-Cl}$  or  $\text{Cl-R}_8\text{-S(O)}_2\text{Cl}$  to provide a subgenus of compounds of Formula I wherein  $R_5$  and  $R_1$  join to form a ring having the structure



wherein Y is  $-\text{C(O)-}$  or  $-\text{S(O)}_2-$ . The reaction is preferably carried out by adding the chloroalkanoyl chloride or chloroalkanesulfonyl chloride compound to a solution of a  
10 compound of Formula X in a suitable solvent such as dichloromethane in the presence of a base such as triethylamine.

Reaction Scheme I



Reaction Scheme II illustrates another process of the invention wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>,

5 R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y and Z are as defined above.

In step (1) of Reaction Scheme II a 7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula VIII is reacted with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl to provide a 7*H*-imidazo[4,5-

10

*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula XI. This reaction can be carried out in the same manner as step (7) of Reaction Scheme I. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods. The 7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula VIII may be provided using steps (1)-(6) of Reaction Scheme I.

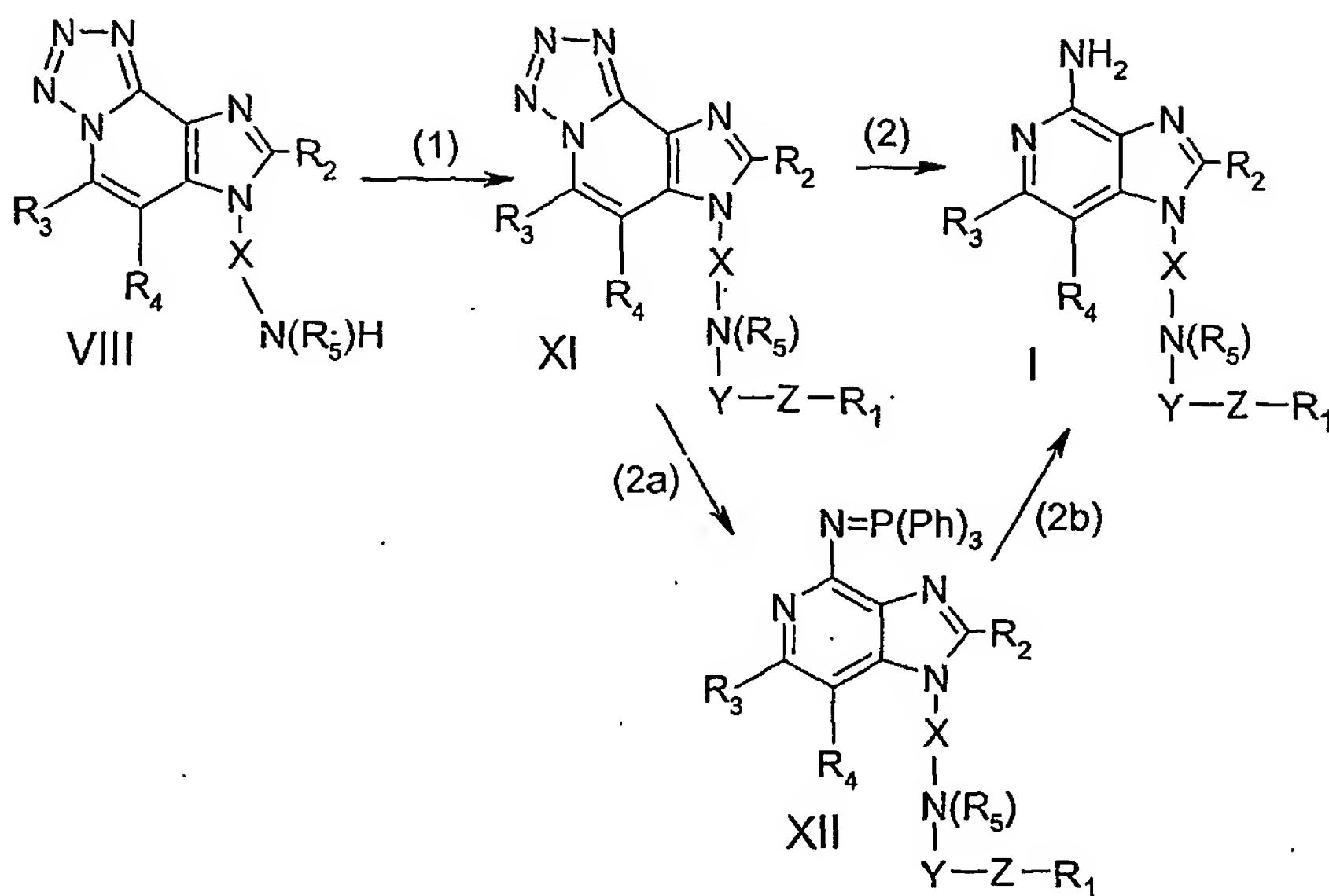
5        In step (2) of Reaction Scheme II, the tetrazolo ring is reductively removed from a 7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula XI to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine of Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof. The reaction can be carried out by reacting the 7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula XI with hydrogen in the presence of a catalyst and an acid. The reaction can be  
10      conveniently run in a Parr apparatus with a suitable catalyst, such as platinum IV oxide, and a suitable acid, such as trifluoroacetic acid or concentrated hydrochloric acid. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

15        Alternatively, steps (2a) and (2b) in Reaction Scheme II can be used in place of step (2) in Reaction Scheme II. In step (2a) of Reaction Scheme II a 7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula XI is reacted with triphenylphosphine to form an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula XII. The reaction with triphenylphosphine can be run in a suitable solvent such as toluene or 1,2-dichlorobenzene under an atmosphere of nitrogen with heating, for example at the reflux temperature.

20        In step (2b) of Reaction Scheme II an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula XII is hydrolyzed to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine of Formula I. The hydrolysis can be carried out by general methods well known to those skilled in the art, for example, by heating in a lower alkanol in the presence of an acid such as hydrochloric acid. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods as the compound of Formula I or as a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.  
25

30        The use of steps (2a) and (2b) is preferred when protection of a 7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula XI from the reductive conditions of step (2) is desired. For example, readily reducible moieties such as alkenyl and heteroaryl groups can be protected from reduction by using steps (2a) and (2b) in place of step (2).

Reaction Scheme II



5 Reaction Scheme III illustrates a process of the invention wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, B, X, Y and Z are as defined above.

In step (1) of Reaction Scheme III the amine protecting group of an 8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula IV is removed to provide an 8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula XIV. The reaction can be carried out as in step (5) of Reaction 10 Scheme I. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

In step (2) of Reaction Scheme III an 8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula XIV is reacted with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl to provide an 8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula XV. The reaction can be carried out as in step 15 (7) of Reaction Scheme I. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

In step (3) of Reaction Scheme III an 8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula XV is reduced to provide a tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine-7,8-diamine of Formula XVI. The

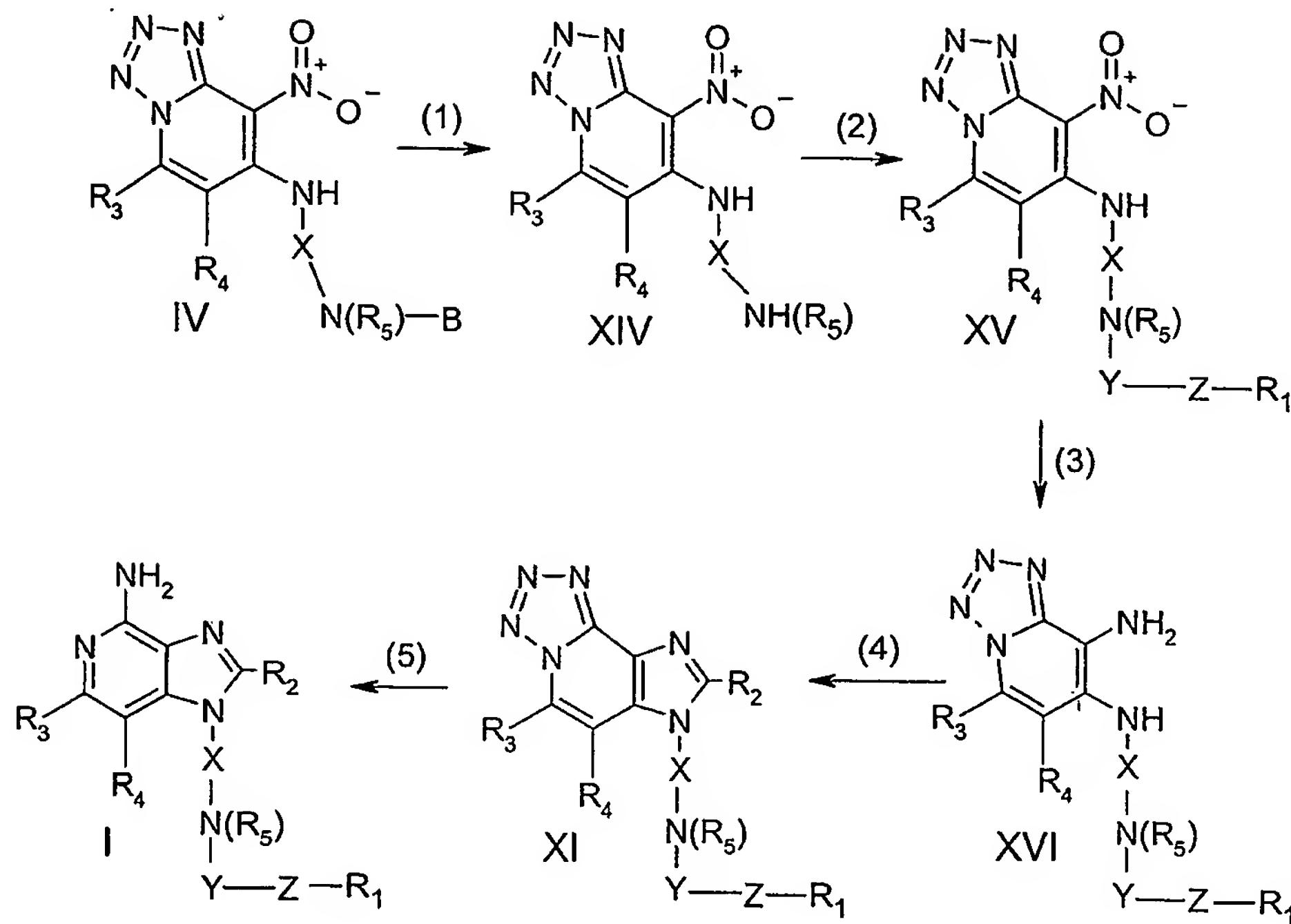
reduction can be carried as in step (3) of Reaction Scheme I. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

In step (4) of Reaction Scheme III a tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine-7,8-diamine of Formula XVI is reacted with an imidate of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub> or with a carboxylic acid of the formula R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide, R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>3</sub>, and R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>(O(O=)C-alkyl); or a mixture thereof, wherein R<sub>2</sub> is as defined above and each alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms to provide a 7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula XI. The reaction can be carried out as in step (4) or steps (4a) and (4b) of Reaction Scheme I. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

In step (5) of Reaction Scheme III the tetrazolo ring is removed from a 7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula XI to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine of Formula I. The reaction can be carried as in step (2) or steps (2a) and (2b) of Reaction Scheme II. The product can be isolated from the reaction mixture using conventional methods.

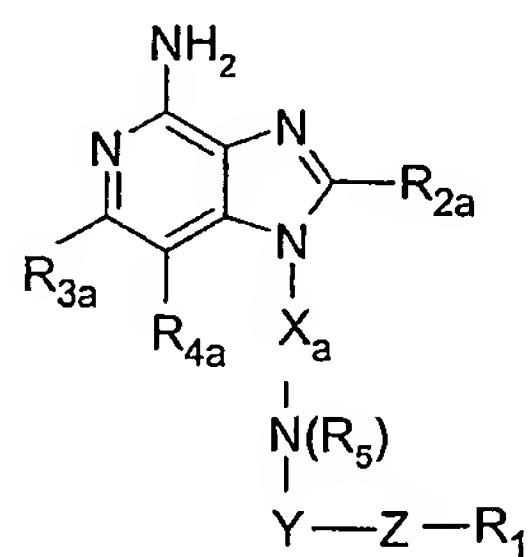
The use of steps (2a) and (2b) of Reaction Scheme II in step (5) of Reaction Scheme III is preferred when protection of a 7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine of Formula XI from the reductive conditions of step (2) of Reaction Scheme II is desired. For example, readily reducible moieties such as alkenyl and heteroaryl groups can be protected from reduction by using steps (2a) and (2b) in place of step (2) of Reaction Scheme II.

Reaction Scheme III



5

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a process (I-a) for preparing 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compounds of the Formula Ia



Ia

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, wherein Y, Z, R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above; X<sub>a</sub> is alkylene; R<sub>2a</sub> is selected from:

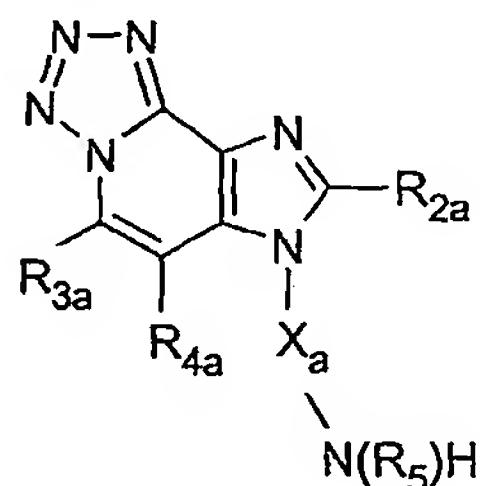
- hydrogen,
- alkyl,
- alkylene-O-alkyl,
- alkylene-S-alkyl, and

-alkyl substituted by one or more substituents selected from:

- OH,
- halogen,
- N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,
- 5 -CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,
- CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,
- SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,
- NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,
- NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,
- 10 -NR<sub>6</sub>-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,
- CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,
- CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,
- N<sub>3</sub>,
- heterocyclyl, and
- 15 -substituted heterocyclyl; and

R<sub>3a</sub> and R<sub>4a</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, and alkylthio; which process comprises the steps of:

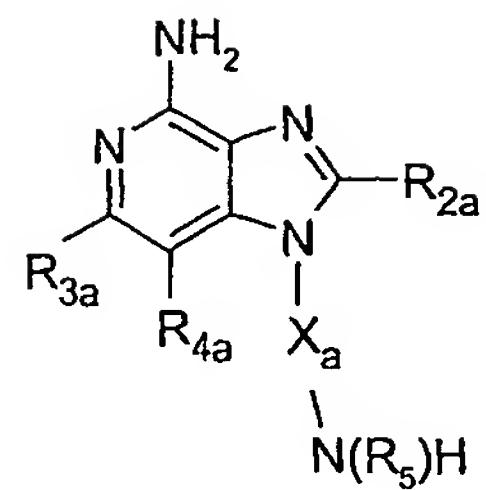
providing a compound of the Formula VIIa



20 VIIa

wherein R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X<sub>a</sub> are as defined above;

reductively removing the tetrazolo ring from the compound of Formula VIIa to provide a compound of Formula Xa



Xa; and

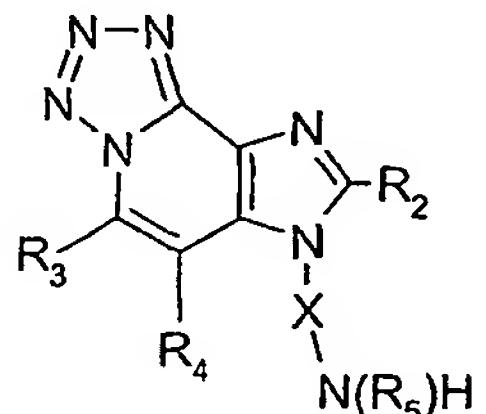
reacting the compound of Formula Xa with a compound selected from  $R_1\text{-C(O)Cl}$ ,  $R_1(R_7)\text{N-C(O)Cl}$ ,  $\text{Cl-R}_8\text{-C(O)Cl}$ ,  $R_1\text{-C(O)OC(O)-R}_1$ ,  $R_1(R_7)\text{N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R}_7\text{)R}_1$ ,  
5  $R_1\text{-N=C=O}$ ,  $R_1\text{-C(O)-N=C=O}$ ,  $R_1\text{-S(O)}_2\text{-N=C=O}$ ,  $R_1\text{-N=C=S}$ ,  $R_1\text{-C(O)-N=C=S}$ ,  
 $R_1\text{-S(O)}_2\text{-N=C=S}$ ,  $R_1\text{-S(O)}_2\text{Cl}$ ,  $\text{Cl-R}_8\text{-S(O)}_2\text{Cl}$ ,  $R_1\text{-S(O)}_2\text{OS(O)}_2\text{-R}_1$ , and  $R_1(R_7)\text{N-S(O)}_2\text{Cl}$ ,  
wherein  $R_1$ ,  $R_7$ , and  $R_8$  are as defined above; to provide a compound of the Formula Ia or a  
pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In another embodiment, the process (I-a) further comprises the step of isolating the  
10 compound of Formula Ia or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In some embodiments, a process (I-a-1) comprises the process (I-a) further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v), and (vi) described above wherein  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ , and  $X$  are  $R_{2a}$ ,  $R_{3a}$ ,  $R_{4a}$ , and  $X_a$ , respectively, defined in process (I-a).

15 In one embodiment, the present invention provides a process (I-b) for preparing  $1H$ -imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compounds of the Formula I and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof as defined above, which process comprises the steps of:

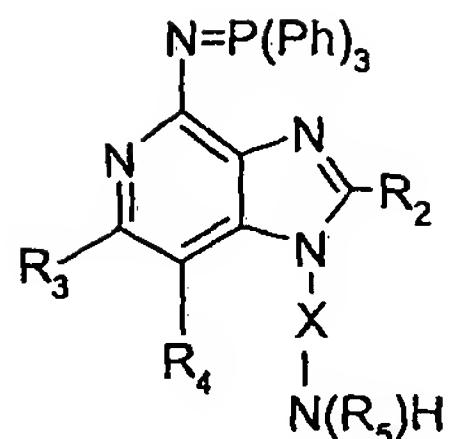
providing a compound of Formula VIII



20 VIII

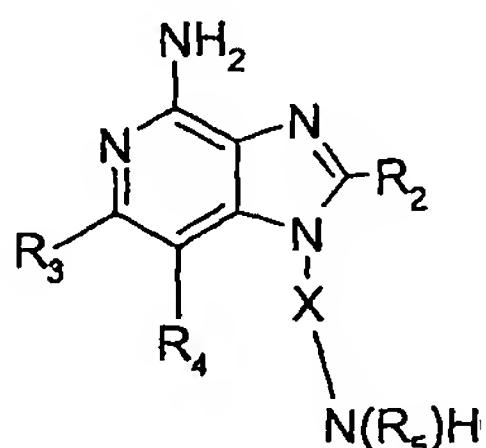
wherein  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , and  $X$  are as defined above;

reacting the compound of the Formula VIII with triphenylphosphine to provide an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula IX



wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above;

5 hydrolyzing the *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of the Formula IX to provide a compound of Formula X



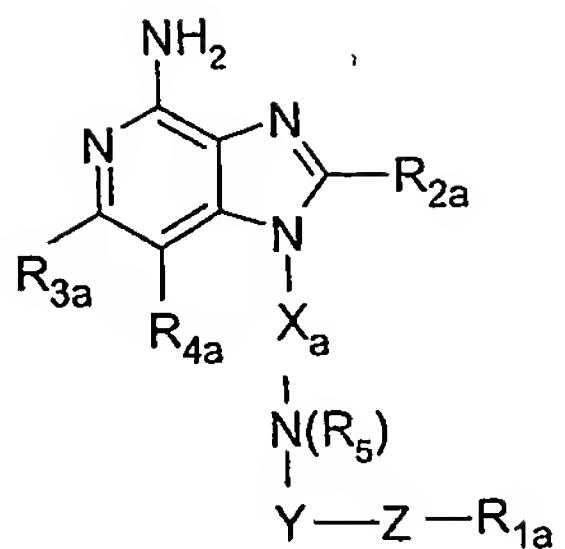
X; and

reacting the compound of the Formula X with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, 10 R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, and R<sub>8</sub> are as defined above; to provide a compound of the Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof as defined above.

15 In another embodiment, the process (I-b) further comprises the step of isolating the compound of Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In some embodiments, a process (I-b-1) comprises the process (I-b) further comprising one or more steps selected from (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v), and (vi) described above.

20 In one embodiment, the present invention provides a process (II-a) for preparing 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compounds of the Formula Ib



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, wherein X<sub>a</sub>, Y, Z, R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above, and R<sub>1a</sub> is alkyl or heterocyclyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:

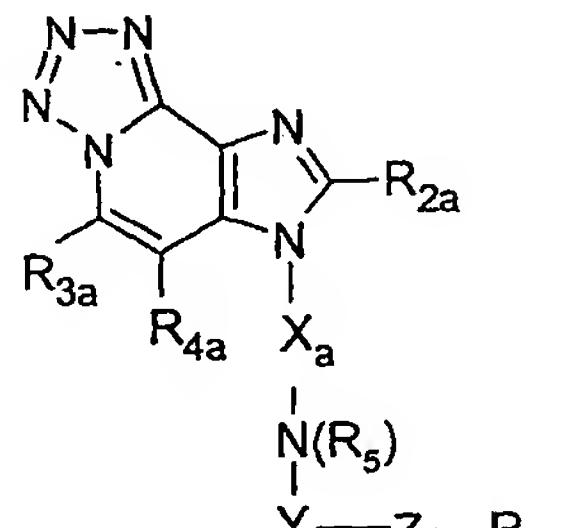
- alkyl;
- heterocyclyl;
- substituted cycloalkyl;
- substituted heterocyclyl;
- O-alkyl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;
- COOH;
- CO-O-alkyl;
- CO-alkyl;
- S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;
- S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;
- S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;
- (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
- (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;
- (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-alkyl;
- P(O)(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>;
- N<sub>3</sub>;
- halogen;
- haloalkyl;
- haloalkoxy;
- CO-haloalkyl;

-CO-haloalkoxy;  
-NO<sub>2</sub>;  
-CN;  
-OH;  
-SH; and in the case of alkyl and heterocyclyl, oxo;

5

which process comprises the steps of:

providing a compound of the Formula XIa



XIa

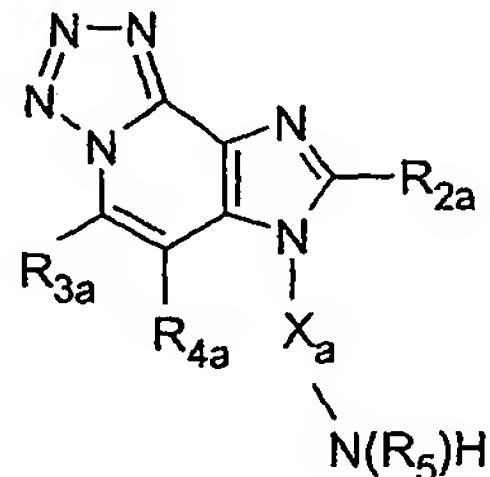
10 wherein R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X<sub>a</sub>, Y, and Z are as defined above; and

reductively removing the tetrazolo ring from the compound of Formula XIa to provide a compound of Formula Ib or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In another embodiment, the process (II-a) further comprises the step of isolating the compound of Formula Ib or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15 In another embodiment, a process (II-a-1) comprises the process (II-a) further comprising the steps of:

providing a compound of the Formula VIIIa



VIIIa

20 wherein R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X<sub>a</sub> are as defined above; and

reacting the compound of Formula VIIIa with a compound selected from R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1a</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>1a</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>1a</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1a</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O,

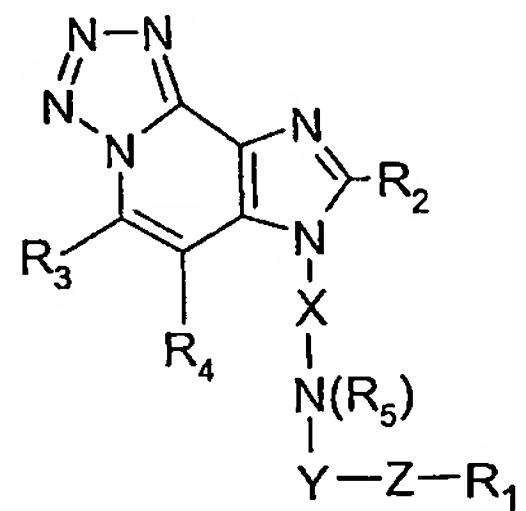
$R_{1a}$ -N=C=S,  $R_{1a}$ -C(O)-N=C=S,  $R_{1a}$ -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S,  $R_{1a}$ -S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl,  $R_{1a}$ -S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1a</sub>, and  $R_{1a}(R_7)N$ -S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, wherein  $R_{1a}$ ,  $R_7$ , and  $R_8$  are as defined above, to provide a compound of Formula XIa defined above.

In some embodiments, a process (II-a-2) comprises the process (II-a-1) further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v), and (vi) described above wherein  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ , and  $X$  are  $R_{2a}$ ,  $R_{3a}$ ,  $R_{4a}$ , and  $X_a$ , respectively, defined in process (II-a-1).

In some embodiments, a process (II-a-3) comprises the process (II-a-1) further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (i), (ii), (iii), (x), (xi), (xii), and (xiii) described above wherein  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ , and  $X$  are  $R_{2a}$ ,  $R_{3a}$ ,  $R_{4a}$ , and  $X_a$ , respectively, defined in process (II-a-1).

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a process (II-b) for preparing 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compounds of the Formula I and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof as defined above, which process comprises the steps of:

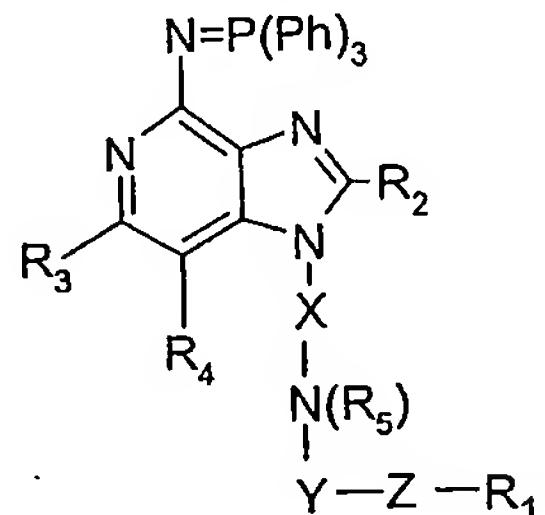
15 providing a compound of Formula XI



XI

wherein  $R_1$ ,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ ,  $X$ ,  $Y$ , and  $Z$  are as defined above;

reacting the compound of the Formula XI with triphenylphosphine to provide  
20 an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula XII



XII

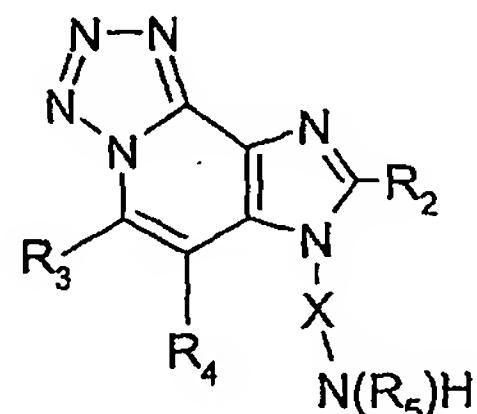
wherein  $R_1$ ,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ ,  $X$ ,  $Y$ , and  $Z$  are as defined above; and

hydrolyzing the *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of the Formula XII to provide a compound of Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In another embodiment, the process (II-b) further comprises the step of isolating the compound of the Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

5 In another embodiment, a process (II-b-1) comprises the process (II-b) further comprising the steps of:

providing a compound of the Formula VIII



VIII

10 wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above; and

reacting the compound of Formula VIII with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O,

R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl,

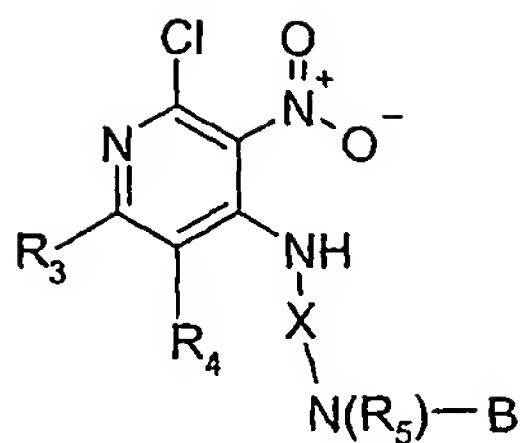
15 R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, and R<sub>8</sub> are as defined above, to provide a compound of Formula XI defined above.

In some embodiments, a process (II-b-2) comprises the process (II-b-1) further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v), and (vi) described above.

20 In some embodiments, a process (II-b-3) comprises the process (II-b-1) further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (i), (ii), (iii), (x), (xi), (xii), and (xiii) described above.

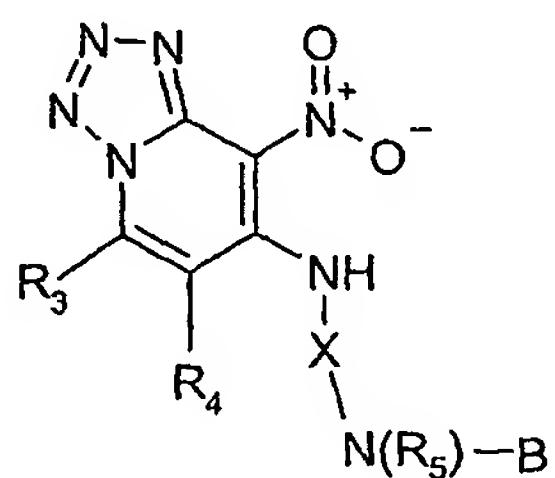
In one embodiment, the present invention provides a process (III) for preparing a chemical compound comprising the steps of:

25 providing a compound of Formula III



wherein B, X, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above; and

reacting the compound of the Formula III with an alkali metal azide to provide a  
5 compound of Formula IV



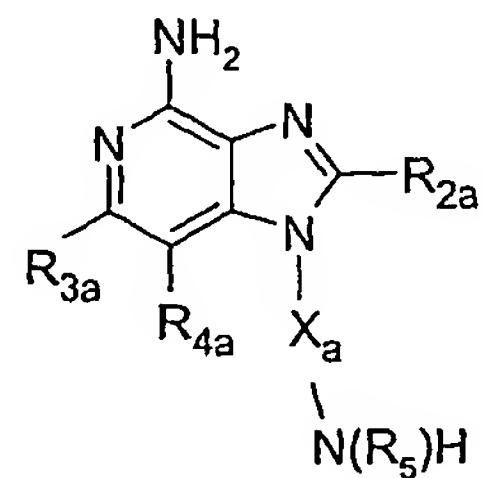
IV

wherein B, X, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above. In certain embodiments, the compound of Formula III is reacted with the alkali metal azide in the presence of cerium III chloride.

10 In another embodiment, the process (III) further comprises the step of isolating the compound of Formula IV.

In some embodiments, a process (III-a) comprises the process (III) further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (iv), (v), and (vi) described above and (vii-1) and (viii-a):

15 (vii-1) reductively removing the tetrazolo ring from a compound of the Formula VIIIa defined above to provide a compound of Formula Xa



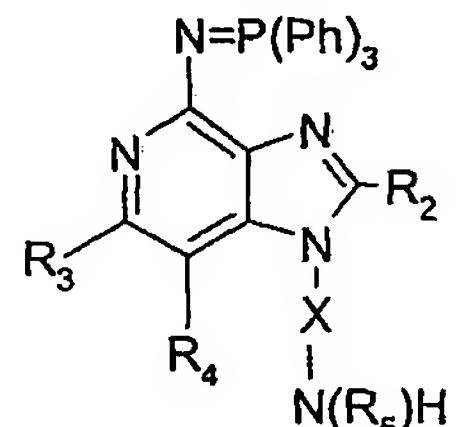
Xa

wherein R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X<sub>a</sub> are as defined above; and

(viii-a) reacting a compound of the Formula Xa with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, 5 R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl; wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, and R<sub>8</sub> are as defined above to provide a compound of Formula Ia or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof defined above.

In some embodiments, a process (III-b) comprises the process (III) further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (iv), (v), and (vi) described above and 10 (vii-a), (vii-b), and (viii-b):

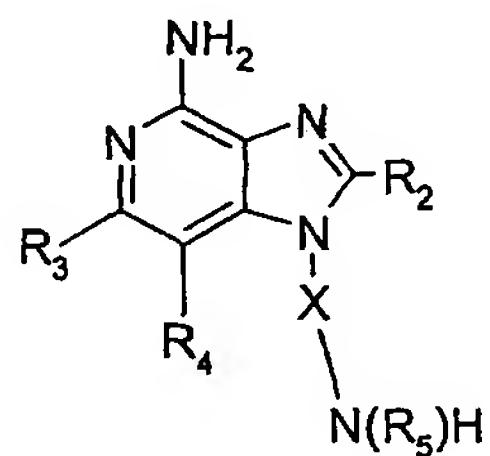
(vii-a) reacting a compound of the Formula VIII defined above with triphenylphosphine to provide an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula IX



IX

15 wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above;

(vii-b) hydrolyzing an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of the Formula IX to provide a compound of Formula X



X

20 wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above; and

(viii-b) reacting a compound of the Formula X with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl,

R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl; wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, and R<sub>8</sub> are as defined above to provide a compound of Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof defined above.

5 In some embodiments, a process (III-c) comprises the process (III) further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (iv), (v), and (vi) described above and (viii-c) and (vii-2):

(viii-c) reacting a compound of the Formula VIIa defined above with a compound selected from R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1a</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>1a</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>1a</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1a</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, 10 R<sub>1a</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1a</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1a</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, R<sub>1a</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1a</sub>, and R<sub>1a</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl; wherein R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, and R<sub>8</sub> are as defined above to provide a compound of Formula XIa defined above;

15 (vii-2) reductively removing the tetrazolo ring from the compound of Formula XIa to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compound of Formula Ib or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof defined above.

In some embodiments, a process (III-d) comprises the process (III) further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (iv), (v), and (vi) described above and (viii-d), (vii-a-1), and (vii-b-1):

20 (viii-d) reacting a compound of the Formula VIII defined above with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, 25 R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl; wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, and R<sub>8</sub> are as defined above; to provide a compound of Formula XI defined above;

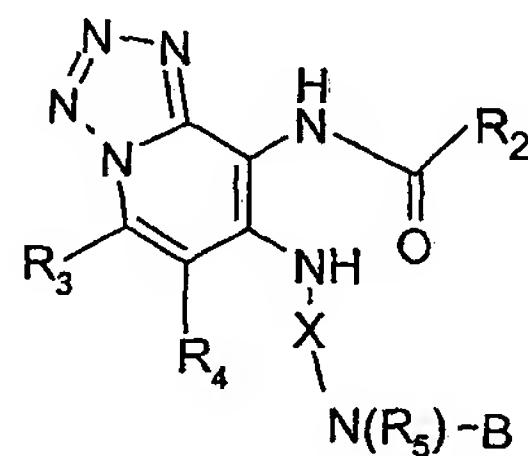
25 (vii-a-1) reacting a compound of the Formula XI with triphenylphosphine to provide an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula XII defined above; and

(vii-b-1) hydrolyzing an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of the Formula XII to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compound of Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof defined above.

30 In certain embodiments, in step (iii) of processes (I-a-1), (I-b-1), (II-a-2), (II-b-2), (II-a-3), and (II-b-3) the compound of Formula III is reacted with an alkali metal azide in the presence of cerium III chloride.

In certain embodiments, the step (v) of processes (I-a-1), (I-b-1), (II-a-2), (II-b-2), (III-a), (III-b), (III-c), and (III-d) includes the steps of:

(v-a) reacting a compound of the Formula V with a carboxylic acid of the formula  $R_2CO_2H$  or the corresponding acyl halide to form a compound of the Formula VI

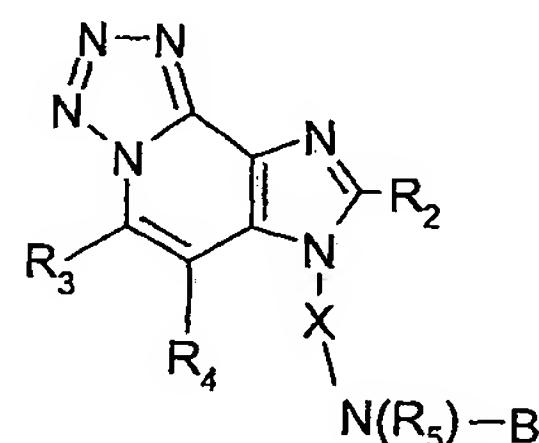


5

VI

wherein B,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , and X are as defined above; and

(v-b) subjecting the compound of the Formula VI to cyclization conditions, during step (v-a) or subsequent to the completion of step (v-a), to provide a compound of the  
10 Formula VII

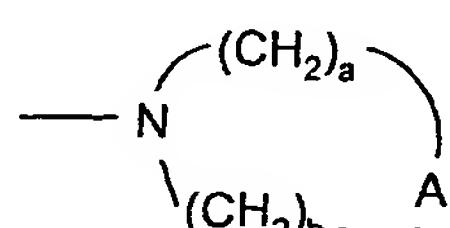


VII

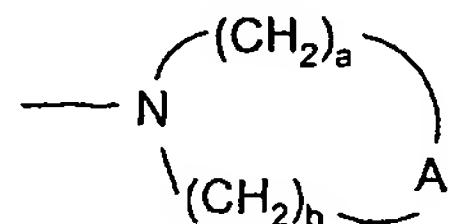
wherein B,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , and X are as defined above.

In certain embodiments, in step (xiii) of processes (II-a-3) and (II-b-3) the  
15 compound of Formula XVI is reacted with an imidate of formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub> as defined above to provide a compound of the Formula XI defined above.

In some embodiments of the above processes, R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, B, X, X<sub>a</sub>, Y and Z are independently selected as follows: R<sub>1</sub> is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> branched alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, and substituted cycloalkyl, or when R<sub>1</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, then R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 4 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7; R<sub>1a</sub> is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> branched alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, cycloalkyl, and substituted cycloalkyl, or when R<sub>1a</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, then R<sub>1a</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



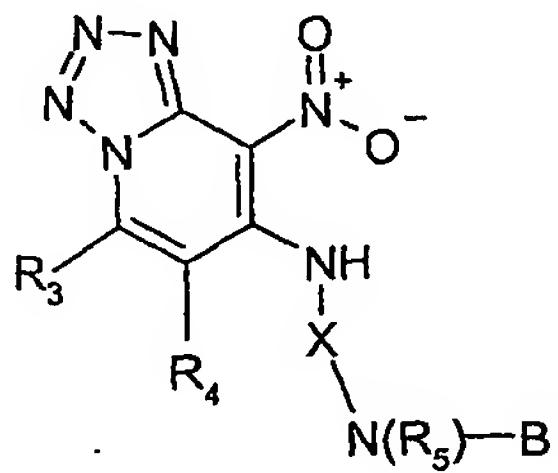
wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 4 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7; 10 R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>2a</sub> are selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene-O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl; R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>4a</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen and methyl; R<sub>5</sub> is selected from hydrogen and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl; B is selected from *t*-butoxycarbonyl, *iso*-butoxycarbonyl, benzyloxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, methoxycarbonyl, benzoyl, pivaloyl, propionyl, acetyl, and phthalimide; X is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkenylene; X<sub>a</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene; Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- 15 wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or when R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms R<sub>7</sub> is joined with R<sub>1</sub> or R<sub>1a</sub> as described above. In certain embodiments, R<sub>1</sub> is selected from methyl, phenyl, and cyclohexyl, or R<sub>1</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>7</sub> to form a morpholino ring; R<sub>1a</sub> is selected from methyl and cyclohexyl, or R<sub>1a</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>7</sub> to form a morpholino ring; R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>2a</sub> are selected from hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, *sec*-butyl, isobutyl, *tert*-butyl, 2-methoxyethyl, ethoxymethyl, and cyclopropylmethyl; R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>4a</sub> are methyl or R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>3a</sub> are methyl and R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>4a</sub> are hydrogen; R<sub>5</sub> is 20 hydrogen; B is *t*-butoxycarbonyl; X and X<sub>a</sub> are selected from ethylene, propylene (including straight chain and branched, for example, -CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)-CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH<sub>2</sub>-CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)-, -CH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)-, -C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-), and butylene (including straight chain and branched, for example, -CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH<sub>2</sub>-CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)-CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)-, -C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH<sub>2</sub>-C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-, -CH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)-CH<sub>2</sub>-, 25

-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)-, -C(CH<sub>3</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)-, -CH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)-; Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen or R<sub>7</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>1</sub> or R<sub>1a</sub> to form a morpholino ring. In certain other embodiments, R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>2a</sub> are methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, n-butyl, ethoxymethyl, or 2-methoxyethyl; and X and X<sub>a</sub> are -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- or -CH<sub>2</sub>C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-.

5

The invention also provides novel compounds useful as intermediates in the preparation of the compounds of Formula I. These intermediates have the structural Formulas IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, XI, XIV, XV, and XVI.

One class of intermediate compounds has the Formula IV:



10

IV

wherein

B is a protecting group for the -N(R<sub>5</sub>)- amino group. Examples of B include but are not limited to *t*-butoxycarbonyl, *iso*-butoxycarbonyl, benzyloxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, methoxycarbonyl, benzoyl, pivaloyl, propionyl, acetyl, and phthalimide.

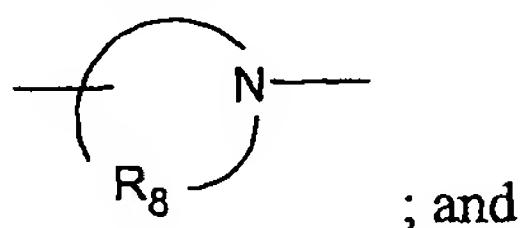
15

X is alkylene or alkenylene;

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, and alkylthio;

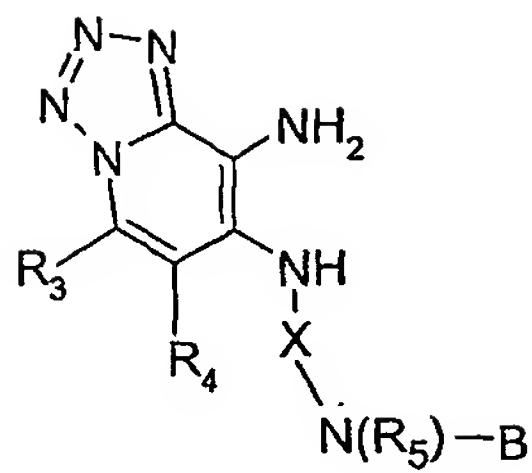
20

R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure



R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene.

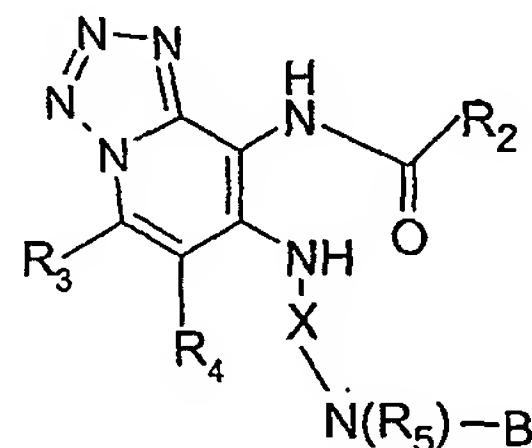
Another class of intermediate compounds has the Formula V



V

wherein B, X, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as described above for the intermediate compound of Formula IV.

5 Another class of intermediate compounds has the Formula VI



VI

wherein

B, X, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as described above for the intermediate compound of  
10 Formula IV;

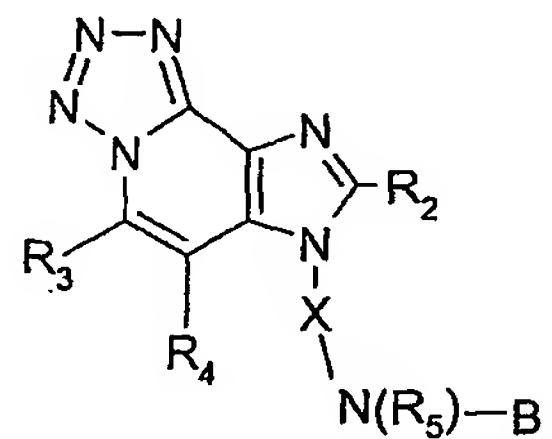
R<sub>2</sub> is selected from:

- hydrogen;
- alkyl;
- alkenyl;
- 15 -aryl;
- substituted aryl;
- heteroaryl;
- substituted heteroaryl;
- alkylene-O-alkyl;
- 20 -alkylene-S-alkyl;
- alkylene-O-aryl;
- alkylene-S-aryl;
- alkylene-O-alkenyl;
- alkylene-S- alkenyl; and

-alkyl or alkenyl substituted by one or more substituents selected from:

- OH;
  - halogen;
  - 5 -N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - 10 -NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - NR<sub>6</sub>-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - N<sub>3</sub>;
  - 15 -aryl;
  - substituted aryl;
  - heteroaryl;
  - substituted heteroaryl;
  - heterocyclyl;
  - 20 -substituted heterocyclyl;
  - CO-aryl;
  - CO-(substituted aryl);
  - CO-heteroaryl; and
  - CO-(substituted heteroaryl); and
- 25 each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl.

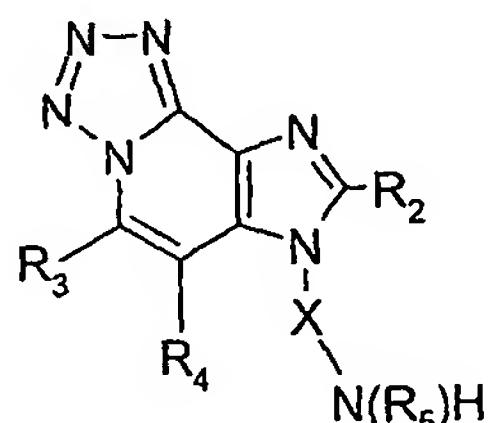
Another class of intermediate compounds has the Formula VII



VII

wherein B, X, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as described above for the intermediate compound of Formula VI.

Another class of intermediate compounds has the Formula VIII

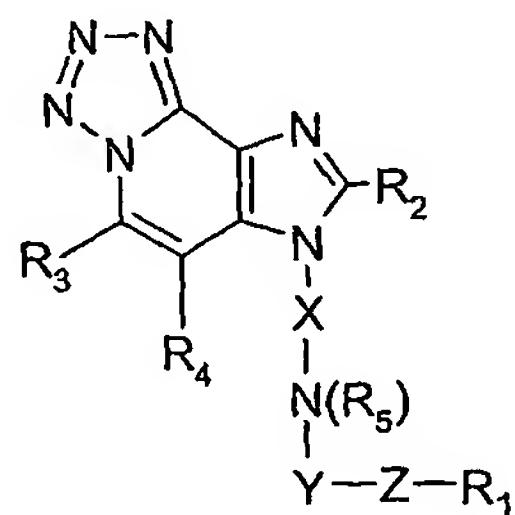


VIII

5

wherein X, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as described above for the intermediate compound of Formula VI.

Another class of intermediate compounds has the Formula XI



XI

10

wherein

X, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, and R<sub>4</sub> are as described above for the intermediate compound of Formula VI;

Y is -CO-, -CS-, or -SO<sub>2</sub>-;

15 Z is a bond, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-CO-, or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-SO<sub>2</sub>-; with the proviso that when Y is -SO<sub>2</sub>-, then Z is a bond or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-;

R<sub>1</sub> is aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, alkyl or alkenyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:

-alkyl;

20

-alkenyl;

-aryl;

-heteroaryl;

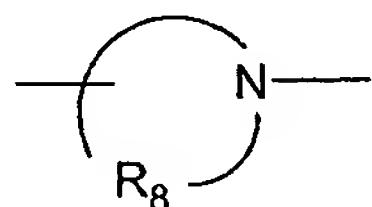
-heterocyclyl;

-substituted cycloalkyl;

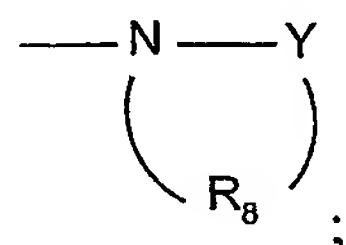
-substituted aryl;  
-substituted heteroaryl;  
-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-O-alkyl;  
5 -O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
10 -O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-COOH;  
-CO-O-alkyl;  
-CO-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;  
15 -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
20 -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-aryl;  
25 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted aryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-heteroaryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted heteroaryl;  
-P(O)(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>;  
-N<sub>3</sub>;  
30 -halogen;  
-haloalkyl;  
-haloalkoxy;

-CO-haloalkyl;  
 -CO-haloalkoxy;  
 -NO<sub>2</sub>;  
 -CN;  
 5 -OH;  
 -SH; and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure

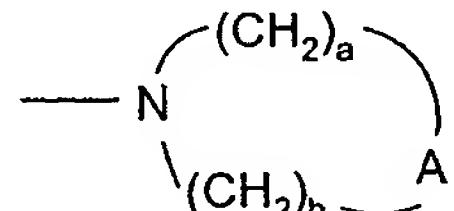


10 or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, and Z is a bond, then R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

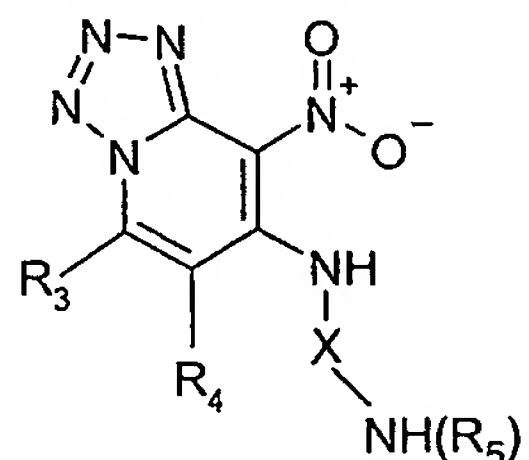
15 R<sub>7</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or when R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2-</sub>, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 6 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7;  
 20 and

R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene.

Another class of intermediate compounds has the Formula XIV



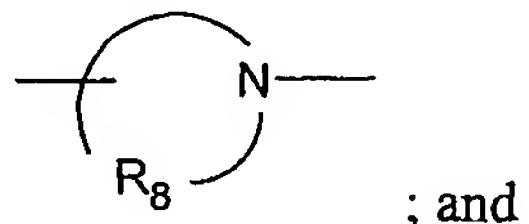
## XIV

wherein

X is alkylene or alkenylene;

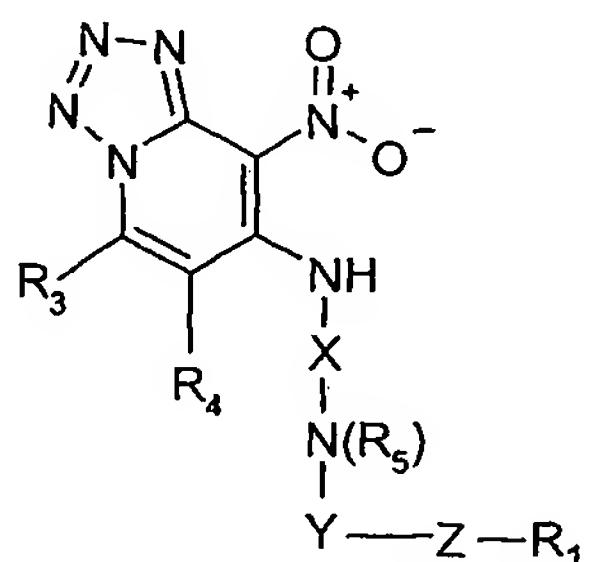
R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen,  
5 alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, and alkylthio;

R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon  
atom of X to form a ring having the structure



R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene.

10 Another class of intermediate compounds has the Formula XV

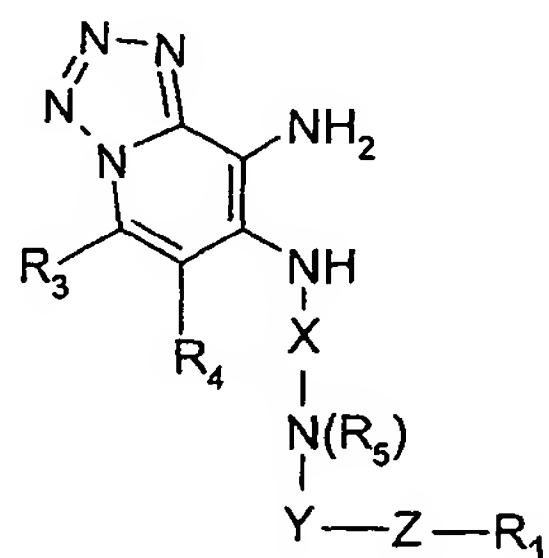


## XV

wherein

X, Y, Z, R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as described above for the intermediate compound  
15 of Formula XI.

Another class of intermediate compounds has the Formula XVI



## XVI

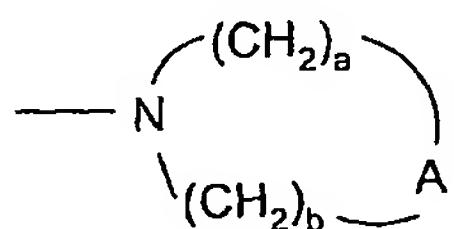
wherein

X, Y, Z, R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as described above for the intermediate compound of Formula XI;

In some embodiments of Formulas IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, XI, XIV, XV, and XVI, R<sub>3</sub> is methyl, R<sub>4</sub> is hydrogen or methyl, or R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are methyl. In certain embodiments of Formulas IV, V, VI, and VII, B is *t*-butoxycarbonyl.

In some embodiments of Formulas VI, VII, VIII, and XI, R<sub>2</sub> is selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene-O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, and in certain other embodiments, R<sub>2</sub> is selected from hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, *sec*-butyl, isobutyl, *tert*-butyl, 2-methoxyethyl, ethoxymethyl, and cyclopropylmethyl.

In some embodiments of Formulas XI, XV, and XVI, R<sub>1</sub> is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> branched alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, and substituted cycloalkyl, or when R<sub>1</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 4 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7. In certain other embodiments, R<sub>1</sub> is selected from methyl, phenyl, and cyclohexyl, or R<sub>1</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>7</sub> to form a morpholino ring.

As used herein, the terms "alkyl," "alkenyl," and the prefix "alk-" are inclusive of both straight chain and branched chain groups and of cyclic groups, i.e. cycloalkyl and cycloalkenyl. Unless otherwise specified, these groups contain from 1 to 20 carbon atoms, with alkenyl groups containing from 2 to 20 carbon atoms. In some embodiments, these groups have a total of up to 10 carbon atoms, up to 8 carbon atoms, up to 6 carbon atoms, or up to 4 carbon atoms. Cyclic groups can be monocyclic or polycyclic and preferably have from 3 to 10 ring carbon atoms. Exemplary cyclic groups include cyclopropyl, cyclopropylmethyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, adamantyl, and substituted and unsubstituted bornyl, norbornyl, and norbornenyl.

Unless otherwise specified, "alkylene" and "alkenylene," are the divalent forms of the "alkyl" and "alkenyl," groups defined above. Likewise, "alkylenyl" and "alkenylényl" are the divalent forms of the "alkyl" and "alkenyl" groups defined above. For example, an arylalkylenyl group comprises an alkylene moiety to which an aryl group is attached.

5       The term "haloalkyl" is inclusive of alkyl groups that are substituted by one or more halogen atoms, including perfluorinated groups. This is also true of other groups that include the prefix "halo-". Examples of suitable haloalkyl groups are chloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, and the like.

The term "aryl" as used herein includes carbocyclic aromatic rings or ring systems.  
10      Examples of aryl groups include phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, fluorenyl and indenyl.

The term "heteroatom" refers to the atoms O, S, or N.

The term "heteroaryl" includes aromatic rings or ring systems that contain at least one ring heteroatom (e.g., O, S, N). Suitable heteroaryl groups include furyl, thienyl, pyridyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, indolyl, isoindolyl, triazolyl, pyrrolyl, tetrazolyl, 15     imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, benzofuranyl, benzothiophenyl, carbazolyl, benzoxazolyl, pyrimidinyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoxaliny, benzothiazolyl, naphthyridinyl, isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, purinyl, quinazolinyl, pyrazinyl, 1-oxidopyridyl, pyridazinyl, triazinyl, tetrazinyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, and so on.

The term "heterocyclyl" includes non-aromatic rings or ring systems that contain at 20     least one ring heteroatom (e.g., O, S, N) and includes all of the fully saturated and partially unsaturated derivatives of the above mentioned heteroaryl groups. Exemplary heterocyclic groups include pyrrolidinyl, tetrahydrofuran, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, thiazolidinyl, imidazolidinyl, isothiazolidinyl, tetrahydropyranyl, quinuclidinyl, homopiperidinyl, homopiperazinyl, and the like.

25      Substituted cycloalkyl, substituted aryl, substituted heteroaryl, and substituted heterocyclyl groups can be substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, alkylthio, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, haloalkylthio, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, carboxy, formyl, aryl, aryloxy, arylthio, arylalkyleneoxy, arylalkylenethio, heteroaryl, 30     heteroaryloxy, heteroarylthio, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heteroarylalkylenethio, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, heterocyclyl, heterocyclalkylenyl, alkylcarbonyl, alkenylcarbonyl, alkoxycarbonyl, haloalkylcarbonyl, haloalkoxycarbonyl,

alkylthiocarbonyl, arylcarbonyl, heteroarylcarbonyl, aryloxycarbonyl, heteroaryloxycarbonyl, arylthiocarbonyl, heteroarylthiocarbonyl, alkanoyloxy, alkanoylthio, alkanoylamino, arylcarbonyloxy, arylcarbonylthio, alkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, heteroarylsulfonyl, aryldiazinyl, alkylcarbonylamino, 5 alkenylcarbonylamino, arylcarbonylamino, arylalkylenecarbonylamino, arylcarbonylaminoalkylenyl, heteroarylcarbonylamino, heteroarylalkylenecarbonylamino, alkylsulfonylamino, alkenylsulfonylamino, arylsulfonylamino, arylalkylenesulfonylamino, heteroarylsulfonylamino, heteroarylalkylenesulfonylamino, alkylaminocarbonylamino, alkenylaminocarbonylamino, arylaminocarbonylamino, arylalkyleneaminocarbonylamino, 10 heteroarylaminocarbonylamino, heteroarylalkyleneaminocarbonylamino, and, in the case of heterocycl, oxo.

The tetrazoles of Formulas IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, XI, XIV, XV, and XVI can also exist in equilibrium with their 4-azido tautomeric form. The processes of the invention and Formulas IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, XI, XIV, XV, and XVI are inclusive of this tautomeric 15 form.

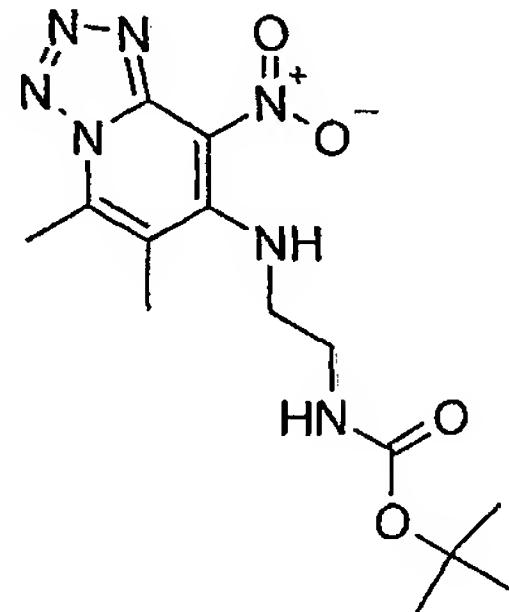
The processes of the invention are useful, for example, for making compounds and salts of Formulas I, or for making intermediates which are useful for making such compounds and salts. Compounds and salts of Formula I are disclosed in U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,525,064; 6,545,016; and 6,545,017, and in International Publication WO 02/46194 as 20 immune response modifiers due to their ability to induce cytokine biosynthesis and otherwise modulate the immune resone when administered to animals. The compounds are useful in the treatment of a variety of conditions such as viral diseases and tumors that are responsive to such changes in the immune response.

Various aspects and embodiments of the invention are further described by the 25 Examples, which are provided for illustration purposes only and are not intended to be limiting in any way.

## EXAMPLES

## Example 1

*tert*-Butyl 2-[(5,6-dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]ethylcarbamate



5

## Part A

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (100 g, 0.458 mol) in ethyl acetate (700 mL) was added to a solution of ethylenediamine (224 mL, 3.34 mol) in ethyl acetate (800 mL) over a period of one hour. During the addition, the temperature of the reaction rose from 20 °C to 34 °C. The reaction was stirred overnight; a white precipitate formed, which was removed by filtration. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a colorless oil, to which 750 mL of water was added. A white precipitate formed, which was removed by filtration and washed with water. The combined aqueous washings were extracted with dichloromethane (6 x 200 mL), and the combined extracts were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 55.4 g of *tert*-butyl 2-aminoethylcarbamate as a colorless oil.

15

## Part B

20

To a solution of 2,4-dichloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridine (20.0 g, 90.5 mmol) in anhydrous *N,N*-dimethylformamide (200 mL) was added triethylamine (14.9 mL, 109 mmol) followed by *tert*-butyl 2-aminoethylcarbamate (17.4 g, 109 mmol) by dropwise addition under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction was heated at 60 °C overnight and became orange. The solvent was then removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting orange oil was dissolved in ethyl acetate (500 mL). The solution was washed with water (3 x 500 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a yellow oil. The oil was triturated with methanol (100 mL) to form a bright yellow solid, which was isolated by filtration, washed with cold methanol, and dried

25

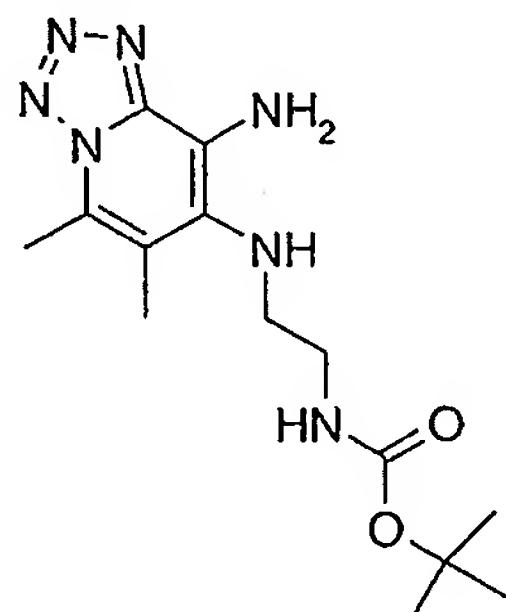
under reduced pressure at room temperature to provide 22.7 g of *tert*-butyl 2-[(2-chloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-4-yl)amino]ethylcarbamate as a bright yellow solid, m. p. 110-112 °C.

5 Part C

Cerium (III) chloride heptahydrate (16.3 g, 43.8 mmol) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl 2-[(2-chloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-4-yl)amino]ethylcarbamate (30.2 g, 87.5 mmol) and sodium azide (11.4 g, 175 mmol) in a 9:1 solution of acetonitrile and water (600 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated at reflux for three days. The 10 reaction was allowed to cool to room temperature, and a precipitate was removed by filtration and washed with additional acetonitrile. The solvents were removed under reduced pressure to provide an orange solid, which was partitioned between ethyl acetate (1.2 L) and water (500 mL). The organic layer was washed with water (3 x 400 mL), and the combined aqueous washings were extracted with ethyl acetate (200 mL). The 15 combined organic solutions were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide an orange solid. The solid was dissolved in a 10% solution of methanol in 2-propanol (550 mL) and cooled overnight in a refrigerator to provide yellow needles, which were isolated by filtration and washed with cold 2-propanol to yield 29.8 g of *tert*-butyl 2-[(5,6-dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]ethylcarbamate as yellow needles, m. p. 145-147 °C.

Example 2

*tert*-Butyl 2-[(8-amino-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]ethylcarbamate



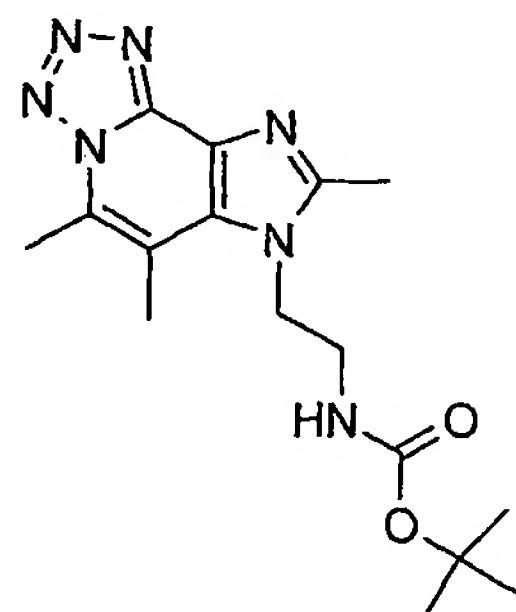
25 *tert*-Butyl 2-[(5,6-dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]ethylcarbamate (29.0 g, 82.5 mmol), anhydrous toluene (900 mL), and 2-

propanol (100 mL) were added to a 2 L stainless steel Parr vessel. The starting material did not completely dissolve. The vessel was flushed with nitrogen, and 5% platinum on carbon (1.5 g) was added to the mixture. The vessel was placed under hydrogen pressure (30 psi,  $2.1 \times 10^5$  Pa) for four hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through a layer of 5 CELITE filter aid, and the filter cake was washed with 2-propanol (500 mL) and ethanol (500 mL). The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to yield 24.6 g of *tert*-butyl 2-[(8-amino-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]ethylcarbamate as a light green solid.

10

## Example 3

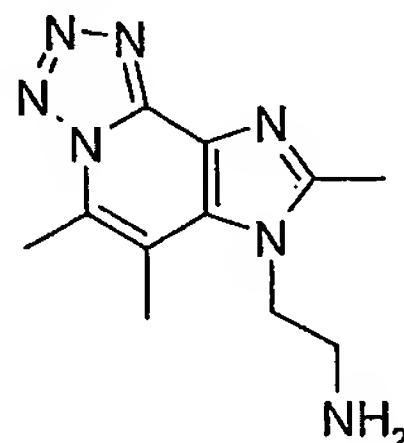
*tert*-Butyl 2-(5,6,8-trimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)ethylcarbamate



Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a mixture of *tert*-butyl 2-[(8-amino-5,6-15 dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]ethylcarbamate (12.2 g, 38.0 mmol), triethyl orthoacetate (7.0 mL, 38.0 mmol), pyridine hydrochloride (1.2 g), and toluene (120 mL) was heated at reflux for 15 minutes. The reaction became homogeneous as it warmed to 60 °C, and subsequently a white precipitate formed. The reaction was allowed to cool to room temperature, and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The resulting 20 white solid was washed with water (500 mL), isolated by filtration, and dried in a vacuum oven overnight at 80 °C to provide 11.30 g of *tert*-butyl 2-(5,6,8-trimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)ethylcarbamate, m.p. > 250 °C.

## Example 4

2-(5,6,8-Trimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)ethanamine trifluoroacetate

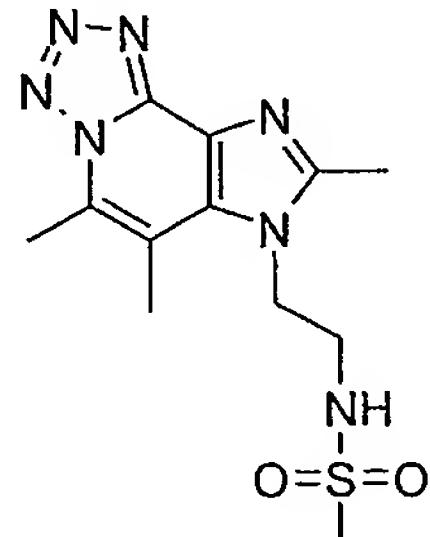


5 To a solution of trifluoroacetic acid (111 mL, 1.45 mol) in dichloromethane (200 mL) was slowly added a solution of *tert*-butyl 2-(5,6,8-trimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)ethylcarbamate (10.0 g, 29.0 mmol) in dichloromethane (150 mL), and the reaction was stirred for 16 hours. The volatiles were then removed under reduced pressure, and additional dichloromethane (200 mL) was added and  
10 subsequently removed under reduced pressure to remove residual trifluoroacetic acid. The resulting white solid was stirred with methanol (200 mL) for one hour, isolated by filtration, washed with methanol, and dried in a vacuum oven overnight at 80 °C to provide 7.45 g of 2-(5,6,8-trimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)ethanamine trifluoroacetate.

15

## Example 5

*N*-[2-(5,6,8-Trimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)ethyl]methanesulfonamide

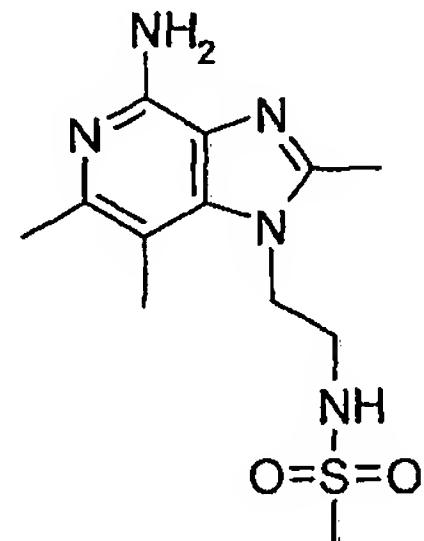


20 Under a nitrogen atmosphere, triethylamine (7.8 mL, 55.7 mmol) was slowly added to a mixture of 2-(5,6,8-trimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)ethanamine trifluoroacetate (4.00 g, 11.1 mmol) and dichloromethane (320 mL). Methanesulfonyl chloride (0.90 mL, 11.7 mmol) was then added, and the reaction became

homogeneous. The solution was stirred for one hour; a white precipitate formed. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and water (200 mL) and sodium carbonate (5 g) were added to the remaining white solid. The mixture was stirred for one hour, and the solid was isolated by filtration and dried in a vacuum oven at 80 °C to provide 3.16 g  
5 of *N*-[2-(5,6,8-trimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)ethyl]methanesulfonamide as a white solid, m.p. >250 °C.

#### Example 6

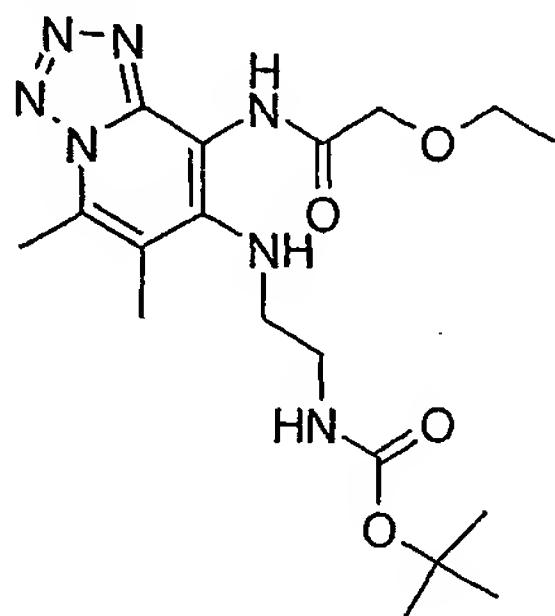
10 *N*-[2-(4-Amino-2,6,7-trimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)ethyl]methanesulfonamide



Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of *N*-[2-(5,6,8-trimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)ethyl]methanesulfonamide (3.00 g, 9.28 mmol) and triphenylphosphine (3.65 g, 13.9 mmol) in 1,2-dichlorobenzene (60 mL) was heated at reflux for 48 hours. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure to provide a brown oil, which was dissolved in methanol (60 mL). A solution of 1.0 M hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (20 mL) was added to the methanol solution, and the reaction was heated at reflux for 24 hours. The reaction was allowed to cool to room temperature, and a brown solid formed, which was isolated by filtration and washed with cold methanol. The solid was dissolved in water (100 mL), and sodium carbonate (3 g) was added to the solution.  
15 A light brown solid was formed, which was isolated by filtration, washed with water, and dried in a vacuum oven overnight at 80 °C. The crude product was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 80:20 dichloromethane:methanol) and dried in a vacuum oven for two days at 90 °C to provide 1.02 g of *N*-[2-(4-amino-2,6,7-trimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)ethyl]methanesulfonamide as a white solid, m. p. >250 °C.  
20 Analysis: Calculated for C<sub>12</sub>H<sub>19</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>2</sub>S: %C, 48.47; %H, 6.44; %N, 23.55. Found: %C, 48.17; %H, 6.35; %N, 23.26.  
25

## Example 7

*tert*-Butyl 2-(*{*8-[*(*ethoxyacetyl)amino]-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-*y*l*)*amino)ethylcarbamate

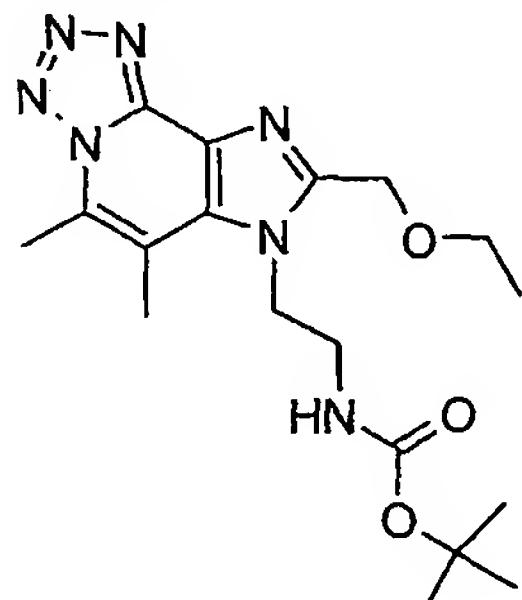


5

A solution of *tert*-butyl 2-[*(*8-amino-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-*y*l*)*amino]ethylcarbamate (24.3 g, 75.6 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (650 mL) was cooled to 0 °C under a nitrogen atmosphere, and triethylamine (10.5 mL, 75.6 mmol) was added. A solution of ethoxyacetyl chloride (9.2 g, 75.6 mmol) in dichloromethane (100 mL) was added dropwise to the reaction. After the solution was stirred for two hours at 0 °C, it was allowed to warm to room temperature overnight, washed with water (3 x 500 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a colorless oil. The oil was triturated with diethyl ether (200 mL), and the resulting solid was isolated by filtration to yield 25.7 g of *tert*-butyl 2-*{*[*(*ethoxyacetyl)amino]-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-*y*l*)*amino)ethylcarbamate as a white solid, m. p. 138-142 °C.

## Example 8

*tert*-Butyl 2-[8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethylcarbamate

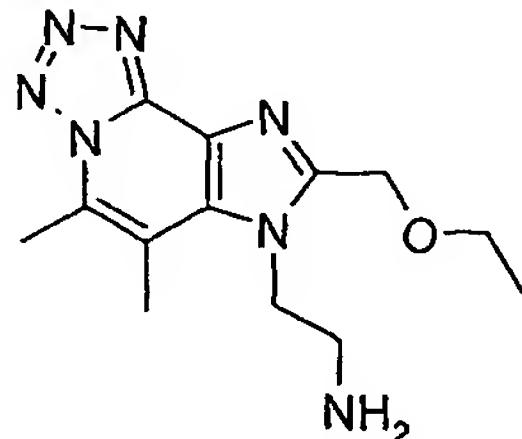


5 A solution of *tert*-butyl 2-((8-[(ethoxyacetyl)amino]-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino)ethylcarbamate (25.5 g, 62.6 mmol) and pyridine hydrochloride (2.5 g) in pyridine (250 mL) was heated at reflux under a nitrogen atmosphere for 16 hours. The reaction was allowed to cool to room temperature; the solvent was then removed under reduced pressure. The resulting white solid was stirred with water (500 mL) for 30 minutes, isolated by filtration, and dried in a vacuum oven overnight at 80 °C to provide 10 21.2 g of *tert*-butyl 2-[8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethylcarbamate as a white solid, m. p. 197-199 °C.

15

## Example 9

2-[8-(Ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethanamine trifluoroacetate

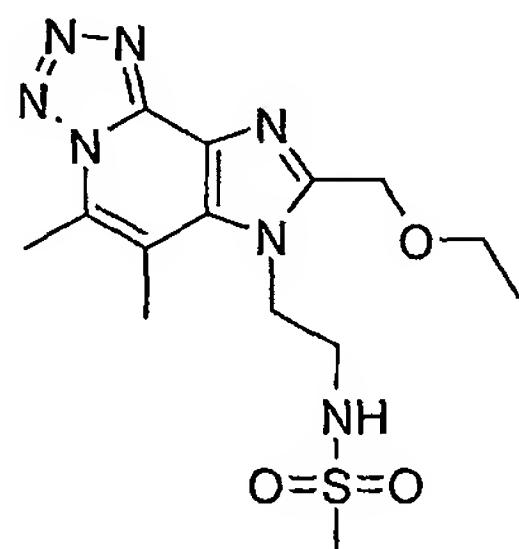


The reaction was carried out as described in Example 4 with the following 20 exceptions. A solution of trifluoroacetic acid (150 mL, 1.95 mol) in dichloromethane (750 mL) was cooled to 0 °C, and a solution of *tert*-butyl 2-[8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethylcarbamate (21.0 g, 53.9 mmol) in

dichloromethane (250 mL) was slowly added. The reaction was allowed to stir for four hours. After the volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, two additional portions of dichloromethane were added and subsequently removed under reduced pressure to provide a light brown solid. The solid was stirred with 2-propanol (400 mL) for one hour, 5 isolated by filtration, and dried in a vacuum oven for four hours at 80 °C to provide 20.6 g of 2-[8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethanamine trifluoroacetate as a white solid.

Example 10

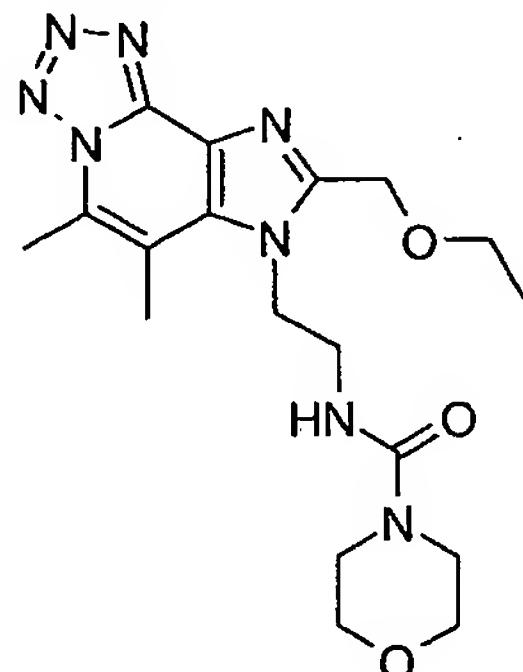
10 *N*-{2-[8-(Ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethyl}methanesulfonamide



The reaction was carried out as described in Example 5 with the following exceptions. Triethylamine (4.73 mL, 34.1 mmol) was added to 2-[8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethanamine trifluoroacetate (2.75 g, 6.82 mmol) in dichloromethane (275 mL), and the reaction became homogeneous after five minutes of stirring. Methanesulfonyl chloride (0.528 mL, 6.82 mmol) was then added. After the reaction was stirred for one hour, an analysis by high-performance liquid chromatography indicated the reaction was incomplete, and additional methanesulfonyl chloride (0.11 mL, 1.36 mmol) was added. The solution was stirred for 16 hours. The white solid isolated after removal of the solvent was stirred with water (150 mL) and sodium carbonate (5 g). After the solid was isolated, washed, and dried, 2.23 g of *N*-{2-[8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethyl}methanesulfonamide was obtained as a white solid, m. p. 218-222 °C.

## Example 11

*N*-{2-[8-(Ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethyl}morpholine-4-carboxamide



5 Under a nitrogen atmosphere, triethylamine (4.73 mL, 34.1 mmol) was added to a mixture of 2-[8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethanamine trifluoroacetate (2.75 g, 6.82 mmol) in dichloromethane (275 mL), and the reaction became homogeneous. After the reaction was stirred for five minutes, 4-morpholinecarbonyl chloride (0.79 mL, 6.82 mmol) was added dropwise to the solution.

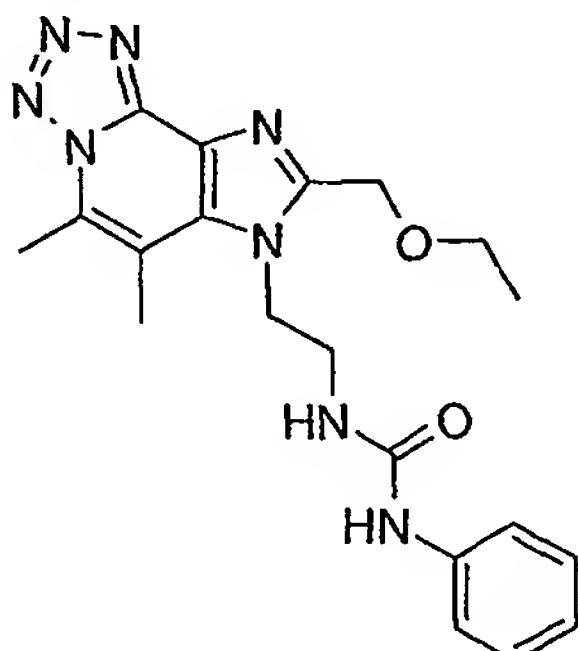
10 The reaction was stirred for two days, and an analysis by high-performance liquid chromatography indicated that the reaction was incomplete. Additional 4-morpholinecarbonyl chloride (0.08 mL, 0.68 mmol) was added, and the reaction was stirred for three more days. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting white solid was dissolved in dichloromethane (250 mL). The organic solution

15 was washed with water (3 x 100 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting solid was dried in a vacuum oven overnight at 80 °C to provide 2.55 g of *N*-{2-[8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethyl}morpholine-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m. p. 205-207 °C.

20

## Example 12

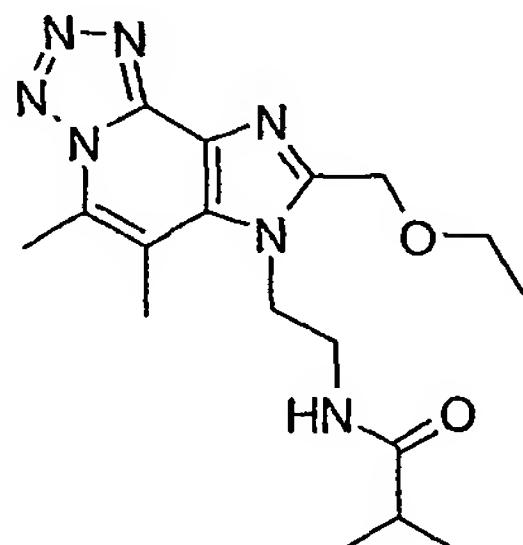
*N*-{2-[8-(Ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethyl}-*N'*-phenylurea



Under a nitrogen atmosphere, triethylamine (1.0 mL, 7.44 mmol) was added to a mixture of 2-[8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethanamine trifluoroacetate (3.00 g, 7.44 mmol) in dichloromethane (300 mL), and the reaction became homogeneous. Phenyl isocyanate (0.85 mL, 7.81 mmol) was then added. The resulting solution was stirred for two hours, washed with water (3 x 500 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 3.0 g of *N*-{2-[8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethyl}-*N'*-phenylurea as a white solid, m. p. > 250 °C. MS(Cl) m/z 409 (M+H).

## Example 13

*N*-{2-[8-(Ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethyl}-2-methylpropanamide

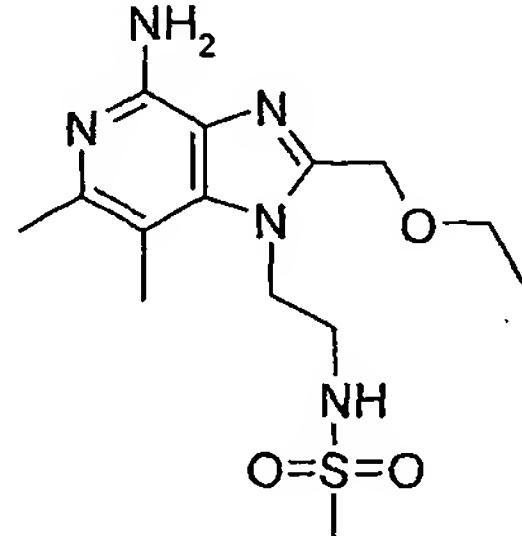


Under a nitrogen atmosphere, triethylamine (12.1 mL, 86.8 mmol) was added to a mixture of 2-[8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethanamine trifluoroacetate (3.50 g, 8.68 mmol) in dichloromethane (175 mL), and the reaction became homogeneous after five minutes of stirring. 2-Methylpropanoyl chloride

(0.95 mL, 9.11 mmol) was then added by dropwise addition, and the resulting slightly yellow solution was stirred for one hour. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting yellow oil was partitioned between dichloromethane (250 mL) and 5% aqueous sodium carbonate (100 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 250 mL), and the combined organic extracts were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 3.0 g of a white solid. This solid was recrystallized from 2-propanol (6.7 mL/g) to provide 2.50 g of *N*-{2-[8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethyl}-2-methylpropanamide as off-white needles, m. p. 179-181 °C. Analysis:  
5 Calculated for C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>25</sub>N<sub>7</sub>O<sub>2</sub>: %C, 56.81; %H, 7.01; %N, 27.28. Found: %C, 56.73; %H, 6.99; %N, 27.47.  
10

#### Example 14

15 *N*-{2-[4-Amino-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}methanesulfonamide

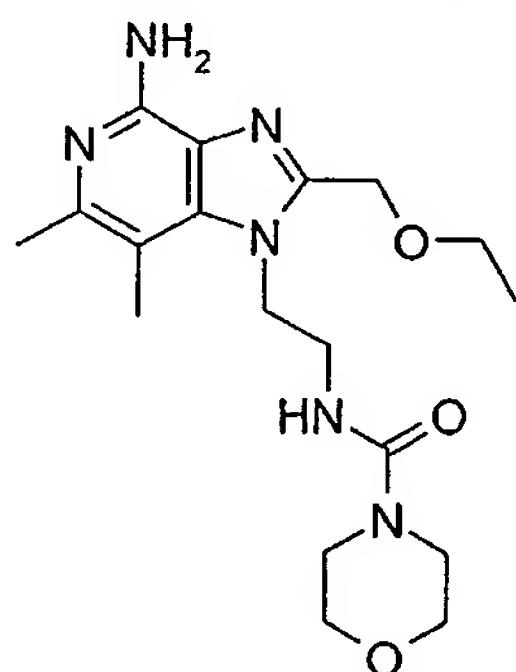


20 *N*-{2-[8-(Ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethyl}methanesulfonamide (2.00 g, 5.44 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (20 mL), and platinum (IV) oxide (0.20 g) were added to a stainless steel Parr vessel, which was then placed under hydrogen pressure (50 psi, 3.4 x 10<sup>5</sup> Pa). For the first six hours, the vessel was flushed with hydrogen every two hours and then maintained under hydrogen pressure (50 psi, 3.4 x 10<sup>5</sup> Pa) for two days. The reaction mixture was filtered through a layer of CELITE filter aid, and the filter cake was washed with additional trifluoroacetic acid. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to yield a light brown oil, which was dissolved in water (25 mL). Sodium carbonate was added to this solution until it exhibited pH 12, and a white solid formed that was isolated by filtration and washed with water. The solid was dissolved in ethanol (50 mL) with heating, and the resulting solution was  
25

allowed to cool to room temperature before a 1.0 M solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (5.4 mL) was added. After the solution was stirred for one hour, the salt precipitated, and the mixture was cooled to near 0 °C. The salt was isolated by filtration, washed with cold ethanol, dried, and then dissolved in water (25 mL). Sodium carbonate (1.5 g) was added to the resulting solution until it exhibited pH 12, and a white solid formed that was isolated by filtration, washed with water, and dried in a vacuum oven for two hours at 80 °C to provide 0.87 g of *N*-{2-[4-amino-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}methanesulfonamide as a white solid, m. p. 185-187 °C. Analysis: Calculated for C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>23</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>3</sub>S: %C, 49.25; %H, 6.79; %N, 20.51. Found: %C, 49.32; %H, 6.74; %N, 20.61.

#### Example 15

*N*-{2-[4-Amino-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}morpholine-4-carboxamide



15

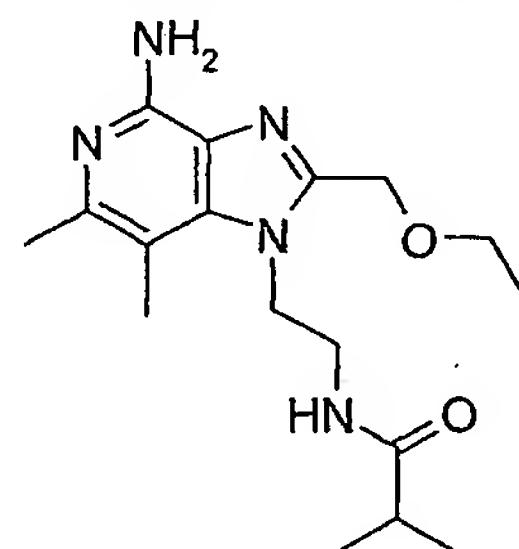
The reaction was carried out as described in Example 14 with the following exceptions. *N*-{2-[8-(Ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethyl}morpholine-4-carboxamide (1.85 g, 4.60 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (18 mL), and platinum (IV) oxide (0.092 g) were added to the Parr vessel. The brown oil, isolated after concentration of the reaction mixture, was dissolved in 37% aqueous hydrochloric acid (30 mL), and the resulting solution was stirred for 15 minutes. The pH of the solution was adjusted to 12 with the addition of sodium carbonate, and the resulting solution was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 300 mL). The combined extracts were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a white solid that was stirred with diethyl ether and isolated by filtration. The solid was dissolved in 2-propanol (50 mL) with heating, and the resulting solution was allowed to

cool to room temperature before a 1.0 M solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (4.0 mL) was added. The salt that formed was isolated by filtration and dissolved in water (25 mL). The pH of the solution was adjusted to 12 with the addition of sodium carbonate, and the resulting white precipitate was isolated by filtration, washed with water, and dried in vacuum oven at 90 °C to provide 1.05 g of *N*-{2-[4-amino-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}morpholine-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m. p. 179-181 °C. Analysis: Calculated for C<sub>18</sub>H<sub>28</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>3</sub>•0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O: %C, 56.75; %H, 7.54; %N, 22.06. Found: %C, 56.74; %H, 7.60; %N, 22.18.

10

## Example 16

*N*-{2-[4-Amino-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}-2-methylpropanamide



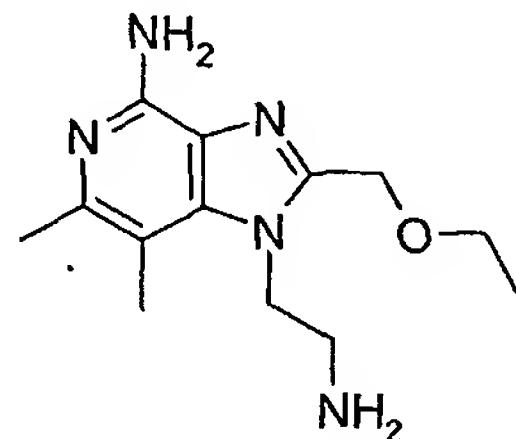
The reaction was carried out as described in Example 14 with the following exceptions. *N*-{2-[8-(Ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethyl}-2-methylpropanamide (1.85 g, 5.15 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (20 mL), and platinum (IV) oxide (0.09 g) were added to the Parr vessel. The reaction was maintained under hydrogen pressure (50 psi, 3.4 x 10<sup>5</sup> Pa) overnight. The light brown oil, isolated after concentration of the reaction mixture, was dissolved in 37% aqueous hydrochloric acid (30 mL). The pH of the solution was adjusted to 12 with the addition of sodium carbonate, and the resulting solution was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 300 mL). The combined extracts were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a colorless oil, which was triturated with diethyl ether to form crystals. The crystals were recrystallized from toluene (60 mL) to provide 1.4 g of white needles, which were further purified by column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 95:5 dichloromethane:methanol) and dried in a vacuum oven at 85 °C to provide 1.13 g of *N*-{2-[4-amino-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-

*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}-2-methylpropanamide as a white solid, m. p. 172-174 °C. Analysis: Calculated for C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>27</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>2</sub>: %C, 61.24; %H, 8.16; %N, 21.00. Found: %C, 61.01; %H, 8.37; %N, 20.96.

5

## Example 17

1-(2-Aminoethyl)-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine



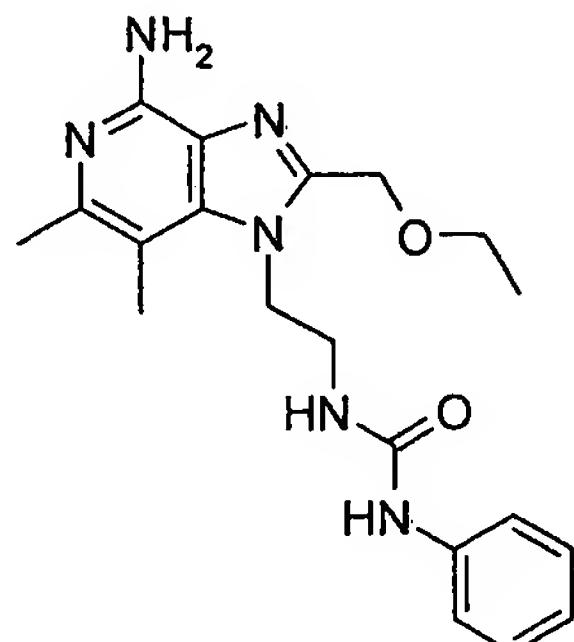
The reaction was carried out as described in Example 14 with the following exceptions. 2-[8-(Ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethanamine trifluoroacetate (14.2 g, 35.2 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (105 mL), and platinum (IV) oxide (0.73 g) were added to the Parr vessel. For the first eight hours, the vessel was flushed with hydrogen every two hours and then maintained under hydrogen pressure (50 psi, 3.4 x 10<sup>5</sup> Pa) overnight. The brown oil, isolated after concentration of the reaction mixture, was dissolved in 37% aqueous hydrochloric acid (25 mL). The pH of the solution was adjusted to 12 with the addition of sodium carbonate, and the resulting solution was extracted with chloroform for two days using a continuous extractor. The chloroform solution was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 8.45 g of 1-(2-aminoethyl)-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine as a white solid, m. p. 163-166 °C.

20

25

## Example 18

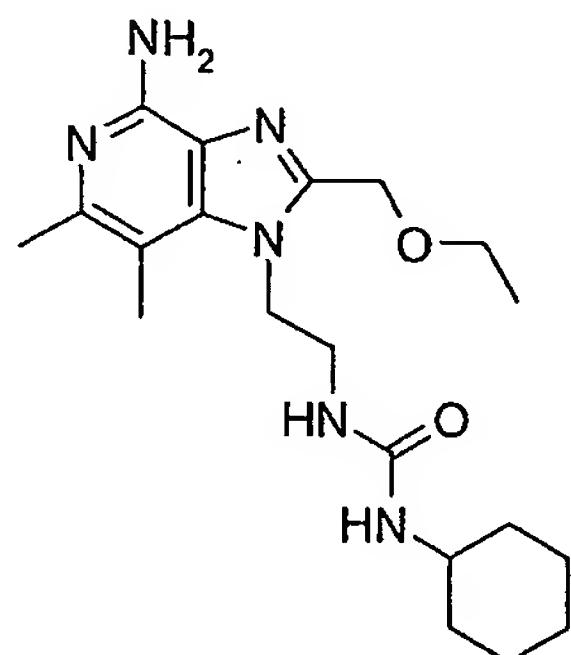
*N*-{2-[4-Amino-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}-*N*'-phenylurea



5 Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of 1-(2-aminoethyl)-2-(ethoxymethyl)-  
6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine (1.75 g, 6.65 mmol) in anhydrous  
dichloromethane (175 mL) was cooled to 0°C. Phenyl isocyanate (0.73 mL, 6.65 mmol)  
was added dropwise to the solution, and the resulting solution was stirred for one hour.  
The solvent was removed under reduced pressure to provide a white solid (2.55 g), which  
10 was heated in methanol (50 mL). An insoluble impurity was removed by filtration, and  
the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 2.05 g of a white solid that  
was dissolved in 2-propanol (25 mL) with heating. To the resulting solution was added a  
1.0 M solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (5.2 mL), and the resulting salt was  
isolated by filtration and washed sequentially with cold 2-propanol and diethyl ether. The  
15 salt was partitioned between 10% aqueous sodium carbonate and dichloromethane. The  
aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 250 mL), and the combined  
organic solutions were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under  
reduced pressure to provide a colorless oil, which was triturated with diethyl ether to form  
crystals. The crystals were purified by column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with  
20 90:10 dichloromethane:methanol) to provide 1.33 g of *N*-{2-[4-amino-2-(ethoxymethyl)-  
6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}-*N*'-phenylurea as a white solid, m. p.  
173-175 °C. The solid first melted at 110 °C and recrystallized. Analysis: Calculated for  
C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>26</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>2</sub>•0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O: %C, 62.08; %H, 6.90; %N, 21.72. Found: %C, 62.27; %H, 6.61;  
%N, 21.80.

## Example 19

*N*-{2-[4-Amino-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}-*N*-cyclohexylurea

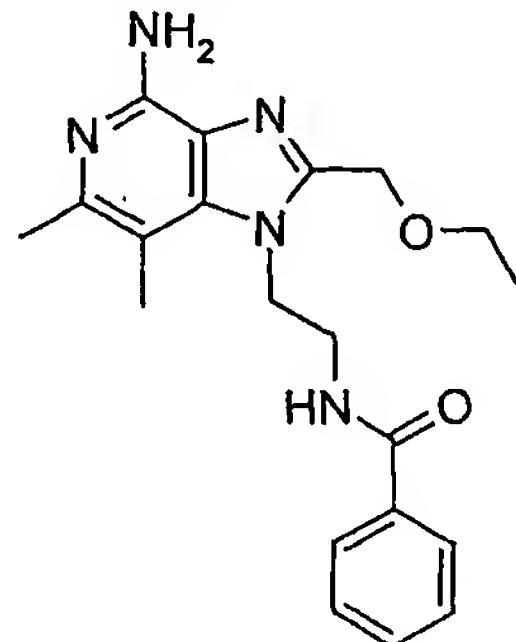


5 Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of 1-(2-aminoethyl)-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine (1.75 g, 6.65 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (175 mL) was cooled to 0°C. Cyclohexyl isocyanate (0.85 mL, 6.65 mmol) was added dropwise to the solution, and the resulting solution was stirred for one hour then allowed to warm to room temperature. An analysis by high-performance liquid chromatography indicated that the reaction was incomplete. Additional cyclohexyl isocyanate (0.085 mL, 0.66 mmol) was added, and the reaction was stirred overnight. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting oil was dissolved in 2-propanol (20 mL). A 1.0 M solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (6.6 mL) was added, and a white salt formed. The mixture was stirred for one hour, and the salt was then isolated by filtration and washed sequentially with cold 2-propanol and diethyl ether. The salt was dissolved in water (30 mL), and the pH of the resulting solution was adjusted to 12 using sodium carbonate. A white oil formed, which slowly solidified. The solid was isolated by filtration and dried in a vacuum oven overnight at 80 °C to provide 1.74 g of  
10  
15  
20

*N*-{2-[4-amino-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}-*N*-cyclohexylurea as a white solid, m. p. 188-190 °C. Analysis: Calculated for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>2</sub>: %C, 61.83; %H, 8.30; %N, 21.63. Found: %C, 61.57; %H, 8.07; %N, 21.45.

## Example 20

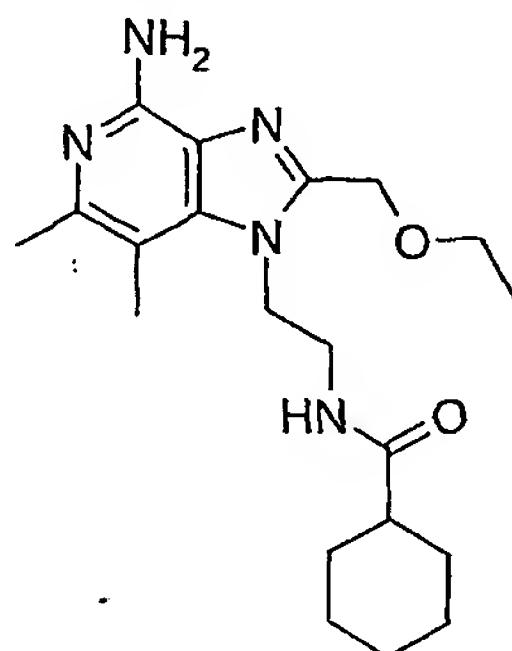
*N*-{2-[4-Amino-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}benzamide hydrochloride



5 Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of 1-(2-aminoethyl)-2-(ethoxymethyl)-  
6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine (1.50 g, 5.70 mmol) in anhydrous  
dichloromethane (150 mL) was cooled to 0°C; triethylamine (0.78 mL, 5.60 mmol) was  
then added. Benzoyl chloride (0.66 mL, 5.70 mmol) was added dropwise, and the reaction  
was stirred for three hours. The reaction solution was washed with 10% aqueous sodium  
10 hydroxide (150 mL), and this solution was then extracted with dichloromethane (150 mL).  
The combined organic solutions were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and  
concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a foamy solid, which was purified by  
column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 85:15 dichloromethane:methanol). The  
resulting solid (1.4 g) was dissolved in ethanol (20 mL) and methanol (20 mL), and a 1.0  
15 M solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (3.8 mL) was added to form a white salt.  
The mixture was stirred for one hour, and the mixture was stored in a freezer overnight.  
The salt was then isolated by filtration, washed sequentially with cold ethanol and diethyl  
ether, and dried in a vacuum oven overnight at 80 °C to provide 1.21 g of *N*-{2-[4-amino-  
2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}benzamide  
20 hydrochloride as a white powder, m. p. > 250 °C. Analysis: Calculated for  
 $C_{20}H_{25}N_5O_2 \bullet HCl$ : %C, 59.47; %H, 6.49; %N, 17.34. Found: %C, 59.38; %H, 6.40; %N,  
17.32.

## Example 21

*N*-{2-[4-Amino-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}cyclohexanecarboxamide hydrochloride

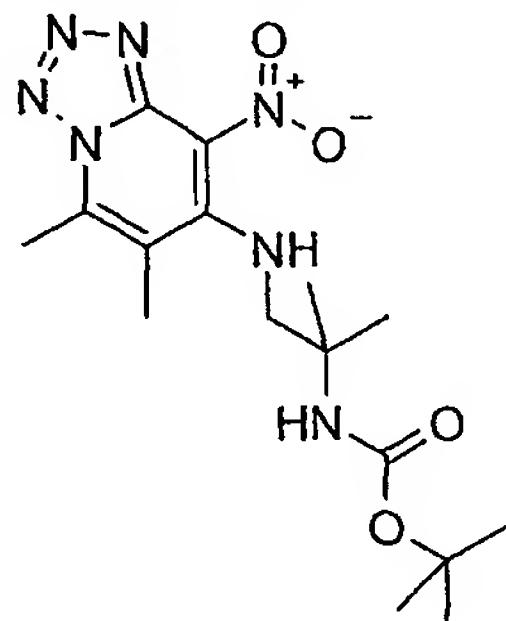


Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of 1-(2-aminoethyl)-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine (1.50 g, 5.70 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (150 mL) was cooled to 0°C; triethylamine (0.79 mL, 5.70 mmol) was then added. Cyclohexylcarbonyl chloride (0.76 mL, 5.70 mmol) was added dropwise, and the reaction was stirred overnight. An analysis by high-performance liquid chromatography indicated that the reaction was not complete, and additional cyclohexylcarbonyl chloride (0.076, 0.57 mmol) was added. The resulting solution was stirred for one hour. The reaction solution was washed with 10% aqueous sodium hydroxide (200 mL), and this solution was then extracted with dichloromethane (200 mL). The combined organic solutions were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 2.04 g of a foamy solid. The solid was dissolved in 2-propanol (25 mL) with heating, and a 1.0 M solution of hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (5.6 mL) was added to form a white salt. The mixture was stirred for one hour, and the salt was then isolated by filtration, washed sequentially with cold 2-propanol and diethyl ether, and dried in a vacuum oven overnight at 80 °C to provide 1.76 g of *N*-{2-[4-amino-2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]ethyl}cyclohexanecarboxamide hydrochloride as a white solid, m. p. 244-246 °C.

Analysis: Calculated for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>31</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>2</sub>•HCl: %C, 58.60; %H, 7.87; %N, 17.03. Found: %C, 58.46; %H, 8.00; %N, 17.01.

## Example 22

*tert*-Butyl 2-[(5,6-dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethylcarbamate



## 5 Part A

1,2-Diamino-2-methylpropane (11.4 mL, 108 mmol) was added dropwise to a cooled solution of 2,4-dichloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridine (20.0 g, 90.4 mmol) and triethylamine (15.2 mL, 108 mmol) in anhydrous *N,N*-dimethylformamide (200 mL). The reaction mixture was heated at 60 °C overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide an orange oil. The oil was partitioned between ethyl acetate and aqueous sodium bicarbonate (500 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 500 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide an orange oil. The oil was triturated with isopropanol (50 mL) and then chilled overnight in a freezer. The resulting solid was isolated by filtration and rinsed with a minimum amount of cold isopropanol to provide 14.0 g of *N*<sup>1</sup>-(2-chloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-4-yl)-2-methylpropane-1,2-diamine as a light orange crystalline solid, mp 89.0-94.0 °C.

## Part B

Sodium hydroxide (18.5 mL of 2N) was added dropwise to a chilled (ice bath) mixture of *N*<sup>1</sup>-(2-chloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-4-yl)-2-methylpropane-1,2-diamine (10 g, 36.7 mmol) and tetrahydrofuran (50 mL). A solution of di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (8.0 g, 36.7 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (50 mL) was added dropwise over 30 minutes. After 2 hours the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature and then left overnight. Analysis by high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) indicated that the reaction was not complete so additional di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (0.05 eq) was added. After 2 hours the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The

residue was partitioned between water (100 mL) and ethyl acetate (100 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 100 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a yellow oil. The oil was dissolved with heating in hexane (75 mL), cooled to ambient temperature, and then placed in a freezer overnight. The resulting solid was isolated by filtration to provide 12.0 g of *tert*-butyl 2-[(2-chloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-4-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethylcarbamate as a yellow crystalline solid, mp 97.0-100.0 °C.

5

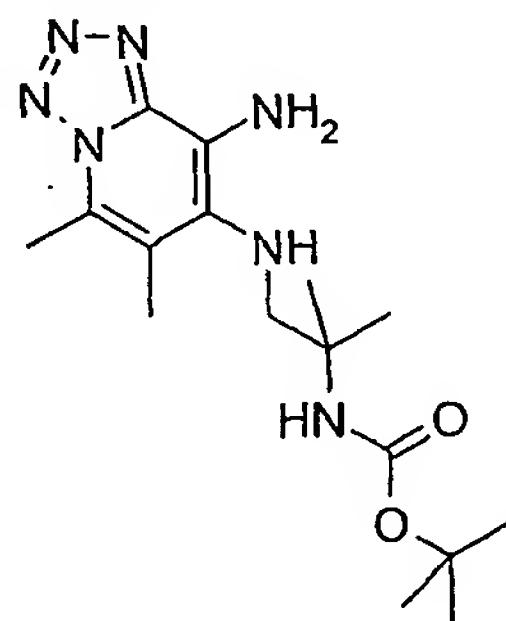
#### Part C

Using the general method of Example 1 Part C, *tert*-butyl 2-[(2-chloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-4-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethylcarbamate (70.0 g, 188 mmol) was reacted with sodium azide (24.4 g, 375 mmol) in the presence of cerium (III) chloride heptahydrate (35.0 g, 94 mmol). The crude product was recrystallized from toluene to provide 66 g of *tert*-butyl 2-[(5,6-dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethylcarbamate as a yellow powder, mp 153.0-155.0 °C.

10

#### Example 23

*tert*-Butyl 2-[(8-amino-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethylcarbamate



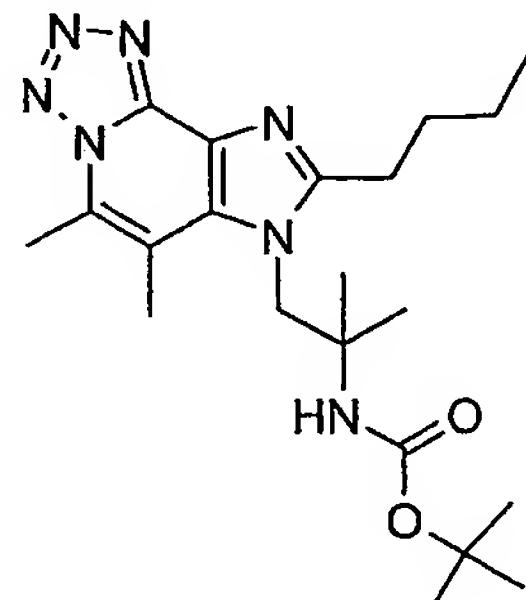
15

Using the general method of Example 2, *tert*-butyl 2-[(5,6-dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethylcarbamate (40.0 g, 105 mmol) was reduced to provide 35.6 g of *tert*-butyl 2-[(8-amino-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethylcarbamate as a light brown solid.

20

## Example 24

*tert*-Butyl 2-(8-butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethylcarbamate

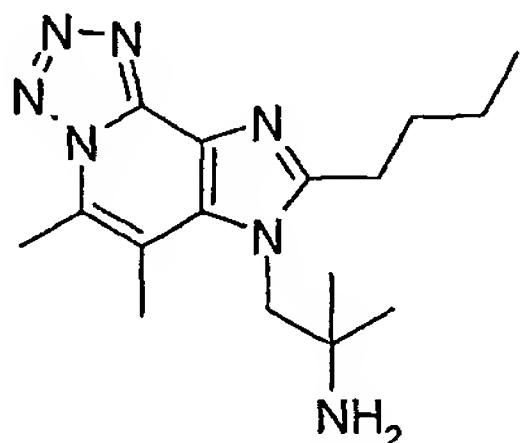


5        Trimethyl orthovalerate (18.4 mL, 107 mmol) and pyridine hydrochloride (3.5 g) were added sequentially to a mixture of *tert*-butyl 2-[(8-amino-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethylcarbamate (35.5 g, 102 mmol) and anhydrous toluene (700 mL) and the reaction mixture was heated to reflux. After about 1 hour additional pyridine hydrochloride (6 g) was added and the reaction mixture was heated at 10 reflux overnight. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and then concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a brown oil. The oil was partitioned between dichloromethane (500 mL) and 5% sodium hydroxide (400 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 300 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 15 about 40 g of a foamy brown solid. The solid was triturated with 30/70 ethyl acetate/hexanes (300 mL). The resulting solid was isolated by filtration and washed with cold 30/70 ethyl acetate/ hexanes to provide 10.6 g of *tert*-butyl 2-(8-butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethylcarbamate as a white solid, mp 179.0-181.0 °C.

20

## Example 25

1-(8-Butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-2-methylpropan-2-amine

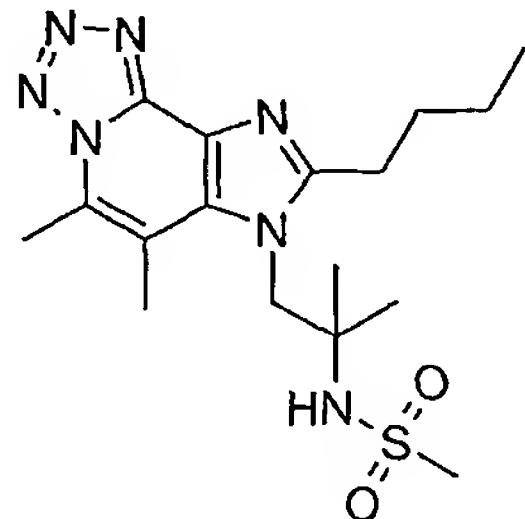


5        *Tert*-butyl 2-(8-butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethylcarbamate (10.4 g, 25.0 mmol) was added in portions over a period of 5 minutes to a chilled (ice bath) solution of hydrochloric acid in ethanol (50 mL of 3.6M). The reaction mixture was heated at reflux for 1 hour, allowed to cool to ambient temperature, and then concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a clear oil. The oil 10      was partitioned between dichloromethane (200 mL) and 10% sodium hydroxide (200 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 200 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 7.76 g of 1-(8-butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-2-methylpropan-2-amine as a white solid, mp 144.0-147.0 °C.

15

## Example 26

*N*-[2-(8-Butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]methanesulfonamide



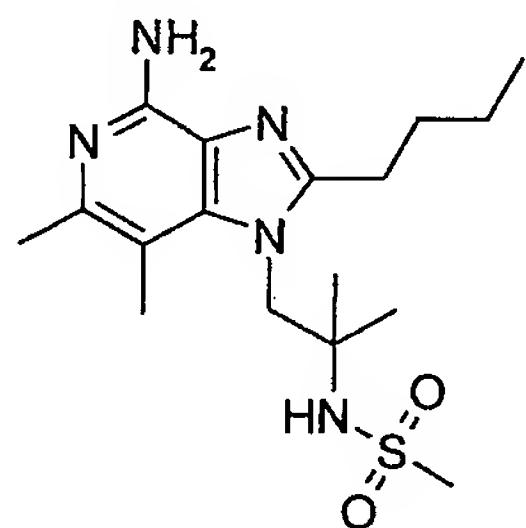
20        Triethylamine (0.93 mL, 6.66 mmol) was added dropwise to a chilled (ice bath) mixture of 1-(8-butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-2-methylpropan-2-amine (2.00 g, 6.34 mmol) and anhydrous dichloromethane (200 mL). Methanesulfonyl chloride (0.52 mL, 6.66 mmol) was added dropwise. The reaction

mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature and then was left overnight. Analysis by HPLC indicated that the reaction was only 50 % complete. Another equivalent of both triethylamine and methanesulfonyl chloride were added. After 2 hours analysis by HPLC indicated that the reaction was 80 % complete. Another equivalent of 5 both triethylamine and methanesulfonyl chloride were added. After 2 hours analysis by HPLC indicated that the reaction was complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with 10% sodium hydroxide (200 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 200 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide about 2.5 10 g of a clear oil. The oil was purified by column chromatography (silica gel eluting with 95/5 dichloromethane/ methanol) to provide 1.66 g of *N*-[2-(8-butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]methanesulfonamide as a white solid, mp 75.0-90.0 °C.

15

## Example 27

*N*-[2-(4-Amino-2-butyl-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]methanesulfonamide

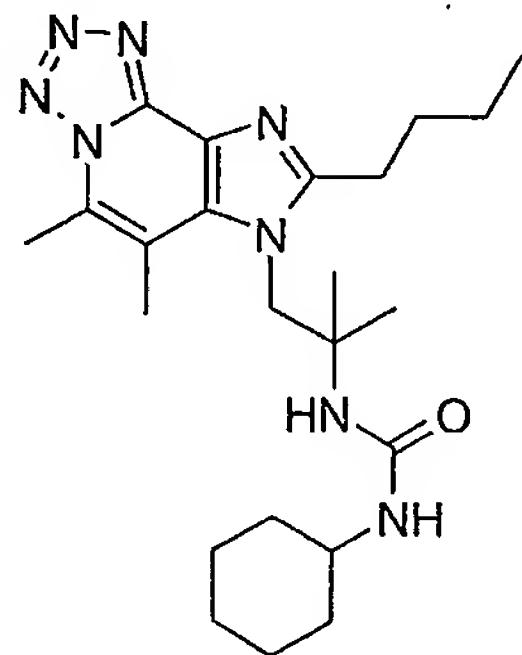


20 *N*-[2-(8-Butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]methanesulfonamide (1.66 g, 4.22 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL), and platinum (IV) oxide (0.16 g) were added to a Parr vessel, which was then placed under hydrogen pressure (50 psi,  $3.4 \times 10^5$  Pa). For the first six hours, the vessel was flushed with hydrogen every two hours; then it was maintained under hydrogen pressure (50 psi,  $3.4 \times 10^5$  Pa) for two days. The reaction mixture was filtered through a layer of CELITE 25 filter aid, and the filter cake was washed with additional trifluoroacetic acid. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a clear oil. The oil was dissolved in concentrated hydrochloric acid (25 mL) and allowed to stir overnight. The pH of the

solution was adjusted to 14 with 10% sodium hydroxide. The resulting mixture was extracted with chloroform (3 x 200 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 1.51 g of a white solid. The solid was dissolved in isopropanol (20 mL), combined with 1 M hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (4.1 mL), and stirred. After 5 minutes a precipitate formed. The mixture was cooled in an ice bath for 1 hour and filtered. The isolated solid was rinsed with diethyl ether to provide 1.2 g of the hydrochloride salt of the desired product. The salt was dissolved in water. The pH of the solution was adjusted to 14 with sodium hydroxide. The resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 200 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide about 1 g of a light orange solid. This material was purified by column chromatography (silica gel eluting with 90/10 dichloromethane/ methanol) to provide 0.85 g of *N*-[2-(4-amino-2-butyl-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]methanesulfonamide as a white solid, mp 90.0-92.0 °C. Anal. calcd for C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>29</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>2</sub>S•0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 54.89; H, 7.99; N, 18.83. Found: C, 54.98; H, 7.95; N, 18.46.

### Example 28

*N*-[2-(8-Butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]-*N'*-cyclohexylurea



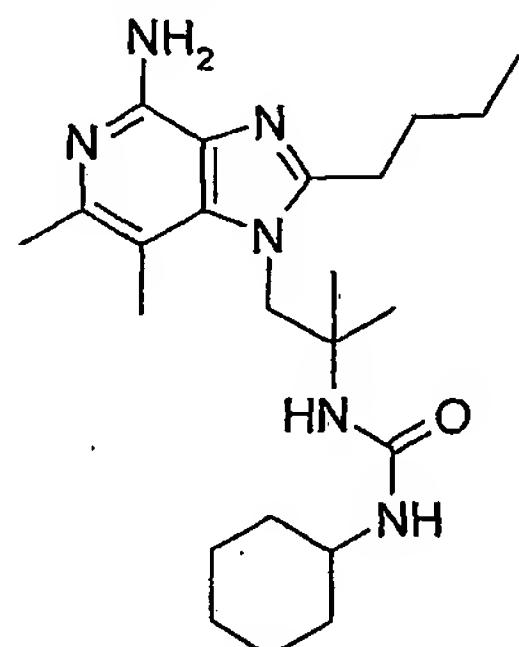
Cyclohexyl isocyanate (4.0 mL, 31.7 mmol) was added dropwise to a chilled (ice bath) mixture of 1-(8-butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-2-methylpropan-2-amine (2.00 g, 6.34 mmol) and anhydrous dichloromethane (40 mL). The reaction was allowed to warm to ambient temperature and then monitored by HPLC. After 3 days the reaction was complete. The reaction was washed with water. The

aqueous was extracted with dichloromethane. The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 2.62 g of *N*-[2-(8-butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]-*N'*-cyclohexylurea as an off white solid, mp 194.0-197.0 °C.

5

**Example 29**

*N*-[2-(4-Amino-2-butyl-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]-*N'*-cyclohexylurea



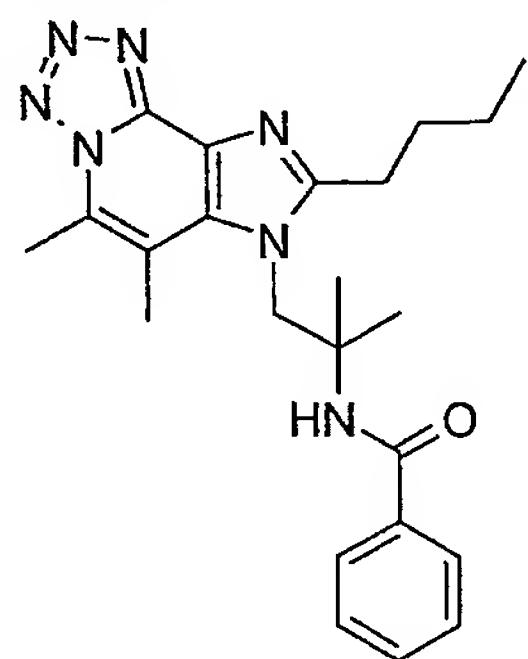
10        *N*-[2-(8-Butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]-*N'*-cyclohexylurea (2.52 g), trifluoroacetic acid (40 mL), and platinum (IV) oxide (0.25 g) were added to a Parr vessel, which was then placed under hydrogen pressure (50 psi, 3.4 x 10<sup>5</sup> Pa). For the first six hours, the vessel was flushed with hydrogen every two hours; then it was maintained under hydrogen pressure (50 psi, 3.4 x 15        10<sup>5</sup> Pa) for two days. The reaction mixture was filtered through a layer of CELITE filter aid, and the filter cake was washed with additional trifluoroacetic acid. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a light amber oil. The oil was dissolved in concentrated hydrochloric acid (40 mL) and allowed to stir overnight. The pH of the solution was adjusted to 14 with 10% sodium hydroxide. The resulting mixture was 20        extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 150 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 2.28 g of a light brown solid. This material was purified by column chromatography (silica gel eluting with 90/10 dichloromethane/methanol) and then recrystallized from isopropanol to 25        provide 1.3 g of a white crystalline solid. The white solid was dissolved in concentrated hydrochloric acid (10 mL) and cooled in an ice bath. Sodium carbonate (7 g) was dissolved in water (20 mL) and then added to the acid solution. A precipitate formed.

50% sodium hydroxide (1 mL) was added to adjust the pH to 14. The solid was isolated by filtration and washed with water. Analysis indicated that this material was a mixture of the free base and the hydrochloride salt. A precipitate formed in the filtrate. This material was isolated by filtration and washed sequentially with 0.5% sodium hydroxide and a very small amount of water to provide 0.25 g of *N*-[2-(4-amino-2-butyl-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]-*N'*-cyclohexylurea as a white solid, mp 128.0-130.0 °C. Anal. calcd for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>38</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O•0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 65.92; H, 9.26; N, 20.05. Found: C, 65.89; H, 9.44; N, 20.07.

10

## Example 30

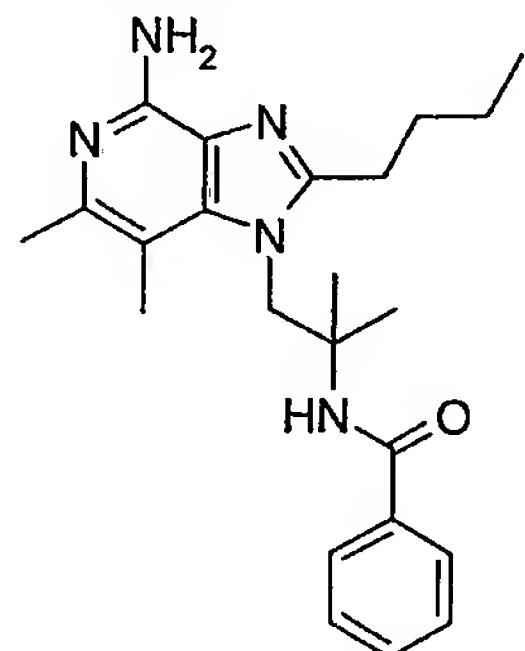
*N*-[2-(8-Butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]benzamide



Benzoyl chloride (0.73 mL, 6.32 mmol) was added dropwise to a chilled (ice bath) mixture of 1-(8-butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-2-methylpropan-2-amine (1.90 g, 6.02 mmol), triethylamine (0.88 mL, 6.32 mmol), and anhydrous dichloromethane (40 mL). The reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography (silica gel, 90/10 dichloromethane/methanol). When the reaction was complete, the reaction mixture was washed with 5% sodium hydroxide (50 mL). The aqueous was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 50 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide about 2.6 g of a light pink solid. This material was purified by column chromatography (silica gel eluting with 95/5 dichloromethane/methanol) to provide 2.40 g of *N*-[2-(8-butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]benzamide as a white solid, mp 201.0-204.0 °C.

## Example 31

*N*-[2-(4-Amino-2-butyl-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]benzamide



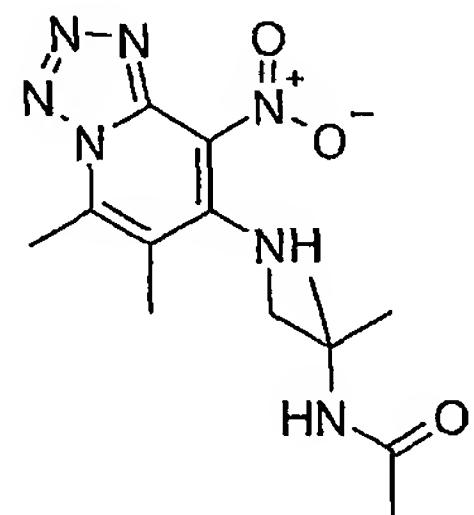
5        *N*-[2-(8-Butyl-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]benzamide (0.50 g, 1.19 mmol), triphenylphosphine (0.47 g, 1.79 mmol), and toluene (10 mL) were combined and heated at reflux until analysis by HPLC indicated that the reaction was complete. The reaction was repeated using 1.89 g of the starting benzamide. The two reaction mixtures were combined and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in a mixture of methanol (50 mL) and 1 M hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (12 mL) and heated at reflux for 2 days. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and was then concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 5 g of brown oil. The oil was combined with water (100 mL) and heated. The mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and then it was 10      filtered to remove a brown solid (1.8 g) which was discarded. The filtrate was made basic with sodium hydroxide and then extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 75 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 2.60 g of light brown solid. The solid was dissolved in isopropanol (25 mL) with heating. The solution was allowed to cool to ambient 15      temperature and then was combined with 1 M hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (5.70 mL). Diethyl ether (20 mL) was added dropwise and the mixture was cooled in an ice bath to precipitate out the hydrochloride salt. The salt was isolated by filtration and washed sequentially with cold isopropanol and with diethyl ether. The salt was dissolved in water (50 mL) with heating. The solution was allowed to cool to ambient temperature 20      and then it was diluted with a solution of sodium carbonate (2 g) in water (10 mL). The pH was adjusted to 14 with sodium hydroxide. The resulting precipitate was isolated by 25

filtration, washed with water, and then dried under vacuum at 40 °C for 4 hours to provide 1.54 g of *N*-[2-(4-amino-2-butyl-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]benzamide as a white solid, mp 150.0-152.0 °C.. Anal. calcd for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>31</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O•0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 69.41; H, 7.98; N, 17.60. Found: C, 69.21; H, 8.10; N, 17.57.

5

### Example 32

#### *N*-{2-[{(5,6-Dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}acetamide



#### 10 Part A

Acetyl chloride (0.94 mL, 13.2 mmol) was added dropwise to a chilled (ice bath) mixture of N<sup>1</sup>-(2-chloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-4-yl)-2-methylpropane-1,2-diamine (3.0 g, 11.0 mmol), triethylamine (1.8 mL, 13.2 mmol), and dichloromethane (30 mL).

After the addition was complete the ice bath was removed. After 1 hour analysis by 15 HPLC indicated that the reaction was complete. The reaction mixture was partitioned between dichloromethane (50 mL) and 5% sodium carbonate. The aqueous was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 50 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide about 3.4 g of an 20 orange solid. This material was recrystallized from acetonitrile (15 mL) to provide 2.50 g of N-{2-[{(2-chloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}acetamide as a yellow crystalline solid, mp 93.0-96.0 °C. The reaction was scaled up using 50.7 g of N<sup>1</sup>-(2-chloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-4-yl)-2-methylpropane-1,2-diamine. The crude product was recrystallized from acetonitrile (90 mL) to provide 53.4 g of N-{2-[{(2-chloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}acetamide.

#### 25 Part B

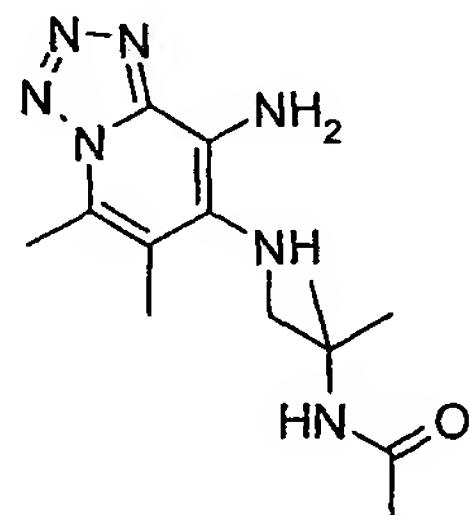
Using the general method of Example 1 Part C, *N*-{2-[{(2-chloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}acetamide (53.0 g, 168 mmol) was reacted

with sodium azide (21.9 g, 337 mmol) in the presence of cerium (III) chloride heptahydrate (31.4 g, 84 mmol). The crude product was partitioned between dichloromethane (1 L) and water (700 mL). The aqueous was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 700 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide about 60 g of a yellow solid. This material was recrystallized from acetonitrile (2 L) to provide 47 g of *N*-{2-[{(5,6-dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}acetamide as a yellow crystalline solid, mp 200.0-202.0 °C.

10

## Example 33

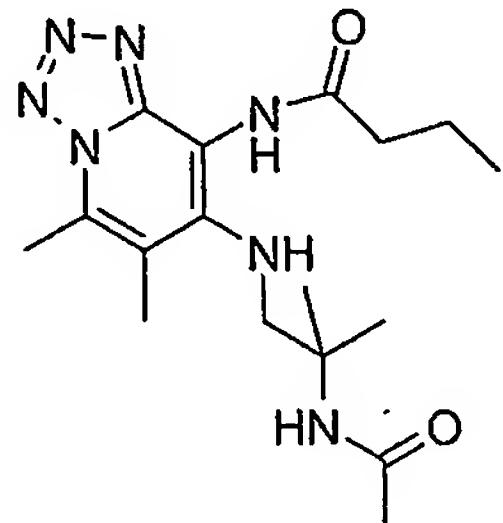
*N*-{2-[{(8-Amino-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}acetamide



15      *N*-{2-[{(5,6-Dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}acetamide (46.5 g) and acetonitrile (900 mL) were added to a 4 L stainless steel Parr vessel. The starting material did not completely dissolve. The vessel was flushed with nitrogen and 5% platinum on carbon (4.0 g) was added to the mixture. The vessel was placed under hydrogen pressure (50 psi, 3.4 x 10<sup>5</sup> Pa) for 16 hours. A white precipitate formed during the reduction. The reaction mixture was flushed with nitrogen for 10 minutes and then diluted with 10% methanol in dichloromethane (500 mL). The reaction mixture was filtered through a layer of CELITE filter aid, and the filter cake was washed sequentially with 10% methanol in dichloromethane (4 x 500 mL) and methanol (3 x 250 mL). The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 38.4 g of *N*-{2-[{(8-amino-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}acetamide as a light green solid.

## Example 34

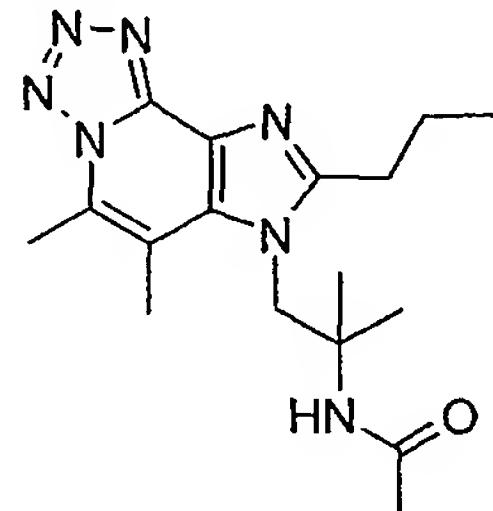
*N*-[7-(2-Acetylamino-2-methylpropylamino)-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-8-yl]butyramide



5 Under a nitrogen atmosphere a solution of butyryl chloride (1.2 mL, 11.7 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (10 mL) was added dropwise over a period of 5 minutes to a chilled (ice bath) mixture of *N*-{2-[(8-amino-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}acetamide (3.1 g, 10.6 mmol), triethylamine (1.6 mL, 11.7 mmol), and anhydrous dichloromethane (90 mL). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature and was monitored by TLC (silica gel, 80/20 ethyl acetate/hexanes). After 16 hours additional triethylamine (1 eq) and butyryl chloride (1 eq) were added. Two hours later the reaction was complete. The reaction mixture was partitioned between dichloromethane (250 mL) and 10% sodium hydroxide (250 mL). The aqueous was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 250 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a clear oil. The oil was triturated with toluene (about 100 mL) to provide 2.6 g of *N*-[7-(2-acetylamino-2-methylpropylamino)-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-8-yl]butyramide as a white solid. The reaction was scaled up using 32.8 g of *N*-{2-[(8-amino-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}acetamide to provide 36 g  
10 of product as a white solid.  
15  
20

## Example 35

*N*-[2-(5,6-Dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]acetamide

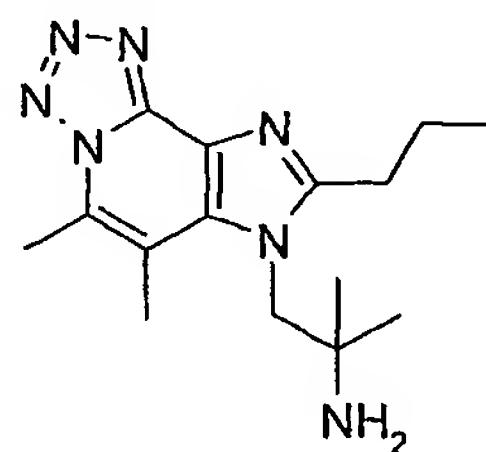


5 Under a nitrogen atmosphere a mixture of *N*-(7-(2-acetylaminio-2-methylpropylamino)-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-8-yl]butryamide (32.7 g, 90.5 mmol), sodium hydroxide (5.4 g, 136 mmol), ethanol (290 mL), and water (66 mL) was heated at reflux for 17 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled in an ice bath. A white solid (about 20 g) was isolated by filtration. This material was recrystallized from  
10 methanol (550 mL) to provide 11.5 g of *N*-[2-(5,6-dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]acetamide as a white crystalline solid, mp 237.0-240.0 °C. A second crop (5.0 g) was obtained by reducing the volume of the mother liquor to about 200 mL and then chilling it in a freezer.

15

## Example 36

1-(5,6-Dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-2-methylpropan-2-amine



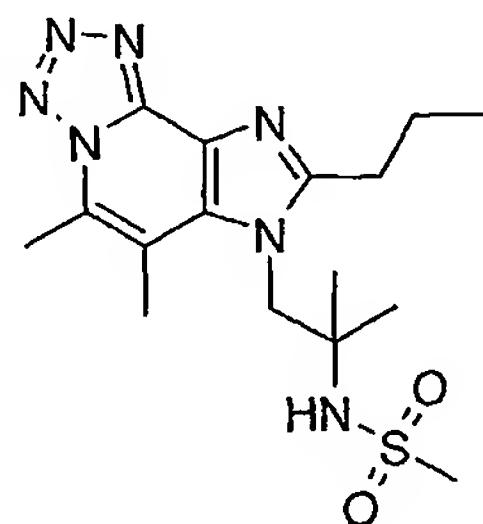
Under a nitrogen atmosphere concentrated hydrochloric acid (144 mL) was slowly  
20 added to a mixture of *N*-[2-(5,6-dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]acetamide (16.5 g, 48.0 mmol) and ethanol (220 mL). The reaction mixture was heated at reflux for 15 days. The reaction was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and a precipitate formed. The precipitate was isolated by filtration

and then partitioned between dichloromethane (150 mL) and 10% sodium hydroxide (150 mL). The aqueous was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 150 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 8.1 g of 1-(5,6-dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-2-methylpropan-2-amine as a white solid, mp 154.0-156.0 °C.

5

### Example 37

*N*-[2-(5,6-Dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]methanesulfonamide



10

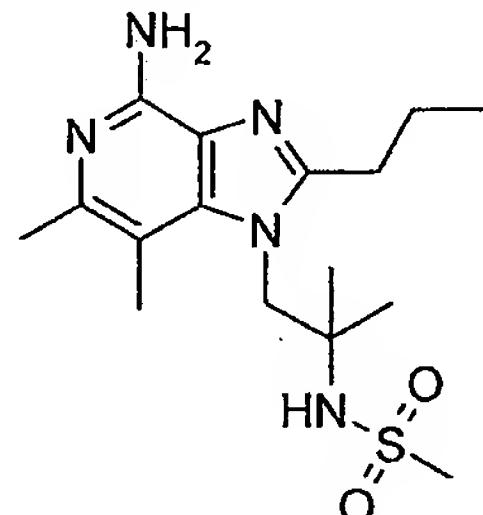
Methanesulfonyl chloride (0.45 mL, 5.81 mmol) was added dropwise to a chilled (ice bath) mixture of 1-(5,6-dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-2-methylpropan-2-amine (1.75 g, 5.81 mmol), triethylamine (1.62 mL, 11.6 mmol), and dichloromethane (50 mL). The reaction was allowed to warm to ambient temperature and was monitored by HPLC. After 2 hours additional methanesulfonyl chloride (0.25 eq) was added. Two hours later the reaction was complete and the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was stirred with water and a solid was isolated by filtration. The solid was recrystallized from isopropanol and then purified by column chromatography (silica gel eluting with 80/20 ethyl acetate/ methanol) to provide 1.30 g of *N*-[2-(5,6-dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]methanesulfonamide as a white solid, mp 190.0-192.0 °C.

15

20

## Example 38

*N*-[2-(4-Amino-6,7-dimethyl-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]methanesulfonamide



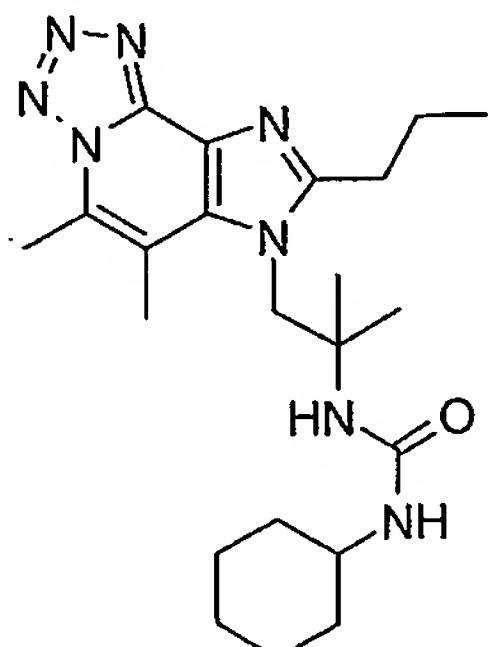
5        *N*-[2-(5,6-Dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]methanesulfonamide (1.28 g, 3.37 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (30 mL), and platinum (IV) oxide (0.13 g) were added to a Parr vessel, which was then placed under hydrogen pressure (50 psi,  $3.4 \times 10^5$  Pa) for 3 days. The reaction mixture was filtered through a layer of CELITE filter aid, and the filter cake was washed with additional trifluoroacetic acid. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a light amber oil. The oil was dissolved in concentrated hydrochloric acid (25 mL) and allowed to stir for 2 hours. The pH of the solution was adjusted to 14 with 10% sodium hydroxide. The resulting mixture was extracted with 90/10 dichloromethane/ methanol (6 x 150 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide about 1.15 g of a light pink frothy solid.

10      This material was purified by column chromatography (silica gel eluting with 80/20 chloroform/ methanol) to provide 1.05 g of a white frothy solid. The solid was stirred with 10% sodium carbonate (150 mL) at 50 °C for 2 hours and then allowed to cool to ambient temperature. The mixture was extracted as described above to provide 0.80 g of a clear oil. The oil was dissolved in water (100 mL) with heat. The solution was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and then was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a glassy solid. This material was dried under vacuum at 40 °C overnight to provide 0.80 g of *N*-[2-(4-amino-6,7-dimethyl-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]methanesulfonamide, mp 85.0-93.0 °C. Anal. calcd for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>27</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>2</sub>S•0.50 H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 53.02; H, 7.79; N, 19.32. Found: C, 53.30; H, 7.48; N, 19.30.

15      20      25

## Example 39

*N*-[2-(5,6-Dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]-*N'*-cyclohexylurea

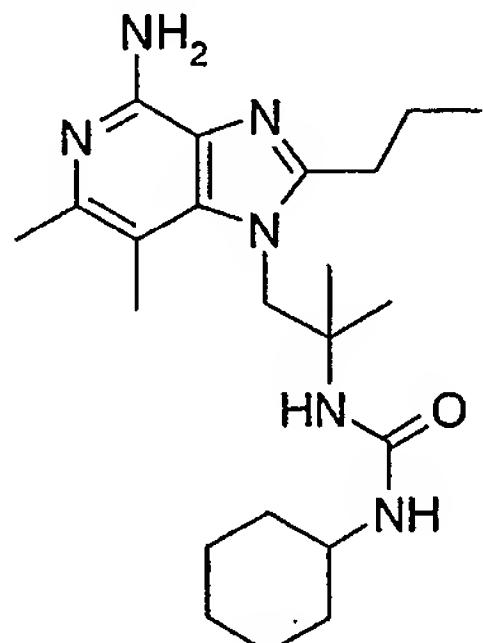


5 Under a nitrogen atmosphere cyclohexyl isocyanate (1.48 mL, 11.6 mmol) was added dropwise to a chilled (ice bath) mixture of 1-(5,6-dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-2-methylpropan-2-amine (1.75 g, 5.81 mmol) and anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL). The reaction was allowed to warm to ambient temperature and then monitored by HPLC. After 16 hours the reaction was complete. The  
10 reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting solid was stirred with diethyl ether and then isolated by filtration to provide 2.11 g of *N*-[2-(5,6-dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]-*N'*-cyclohexylurea as a white solid, mp 196.0-198.0 °C.

15

## Example 40

*N*-[2-(4-Amino-6,7-dimethyl-8-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]-*N'*-cyclohexylurea



20 *N*-[2-(5,6-Dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]-*N'*-cyclohexylurea (2.09 g), trifluoroacetic acid (40 mL), and platinum

(IV) oxide (0.21 g) were added to a Parr vessel, which was then placed under hydrogen pressure (50 psi,  $3.4 \times 10^5$  Pa) for 2 days. The reaction mixture was filtered through a layer of CELITE filter aid, and the filter cake was washed with additional trifluoroacetic acid. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a light amber oil.

5      The oil was dissolved in concentrated hydrochloric acid (35 mL) and allowed to stir for 2 hours. The pH of the solution was adjusted to 14 with 10% sodium hydroxide. The resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 100 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide about 2.0 g of a light brown solid. The solid was recrystallized from

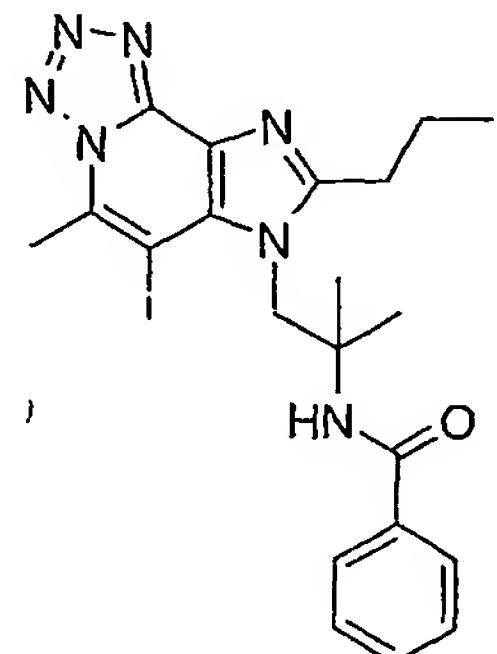
10     isopropanol (50 mL) to provide 1.5 g of a white crystalline solid. The solid was dissolved in ethanol (50 mL) with heating. The solution was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and then combined with 1 M hydrochloric acid in diethyl ether (4 mL). The solution was allowed to stir for 30 minutes and then it was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a clear oil. The oil was dissolved in water (100 mL) and the solution was made

15     basic with 50% sodium hydroxide. The resulting precipitate was isolated by filtration and dried. The solid was combined with 10% sodium carbonate (100 mL). The mixture was stirred at 50 °C for 2 hours and then allowed to cool to ambient temperature. A white solid was isolated by filtration and then dried at 50 °C for 2 days to provide 1.09 g of *N*-[2-(4-amino-6,7-dimethyl-8-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]-

20     *N*-cyclohexylurea as a white solid, mp softens at about 125 °C and then melts at 216.0-218.0 °C. Anal. calcd for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O•0.75 H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 63.81; H, 9.13; N, 20.30. Found: C, 64.00; H, 9.10; N, 20.43

## Example 41

*N*-[2-(5,6-Dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]benzamide

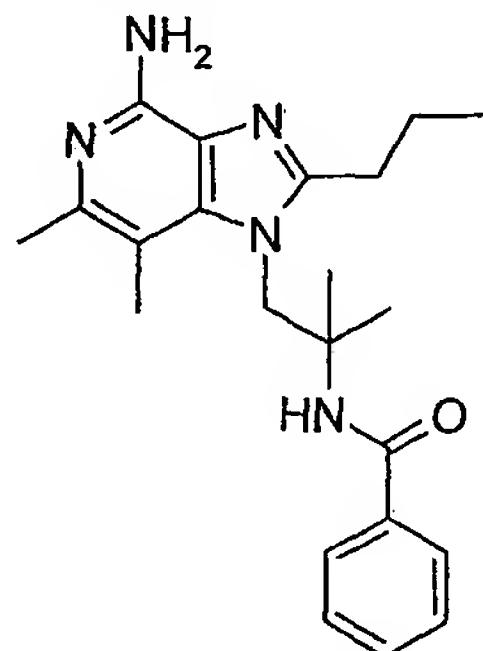


5 Under a nitrogen atmosphere benzoyl chloride (0.67 mL, 5.81 mmol) was added dropwise to a chilled (ice bath) mixture of 1-(5,6-dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-2-methylpropan-2-amine (1.75 g, 5.81 mmol), triethylamine (0.81 mL, 5.81 mmol), and anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL). The reaction was monitored by HPLC. After 4 hours additional benzoyl chloride (0.25 eq) was  
10 added. After an additional 16 hours the reaction mixture was quenched with methanol and then concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a white solid. This material was stirred in water, isolated by filtration, and then dried in a vacuum oven at 50 °C for 16 hours to provide 2.26 g of *N*-[2-(5,6-dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]benzamide as a white solid, mp 221.0-223.0 °C.

15

## Example 42

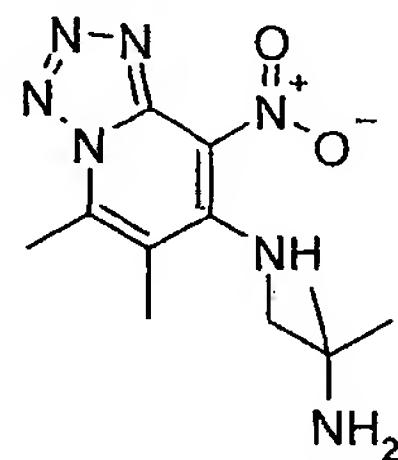
*N*-[2-(4-Amino-6,7-dimethyl-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]benzamide



5      Using the method of Example 31, *N*-[2-(5,6-dimethyl-8-propyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]benzamide (2.20 g) was reacted with triphenylphosphine, hydrolyzed, and then purified to provide 1.16 g of *N*-[2-(4-amino-6,7-dimethyl-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl)-1,1-dimethylethyl]benzamide as a white solid, mp 208.0-210.0 °C. Anal. Calcd for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>29</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O: C, 69.63; H, 7.70; N, 18.45.  
10     Found: C, 69.60; H, 7.93; N, 18.24.

## Example 43

*N*<sup>1</sup>-[(5,6-Dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-2-methylpropane-1,2-diamine

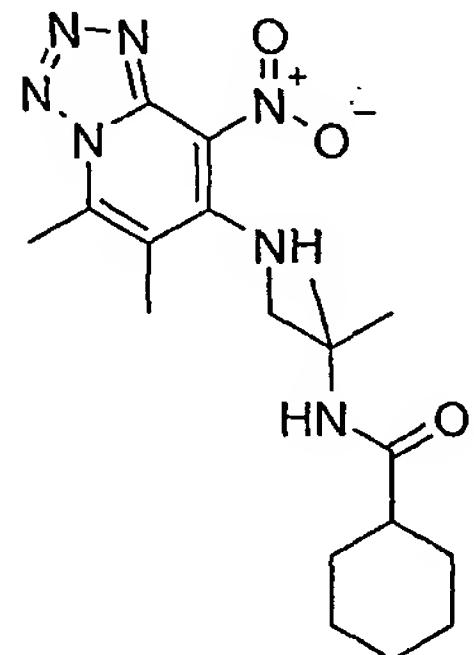


15     *tert*-Butyl 2-[(5,6-dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethylcarbamate (60.0 g, 158 mmol) was added in portions over a period of 5 minutes to a chilled (ice bath) solution of hydrochloric acid in ethanol (260 mL of 3.6 M). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature and then was heated at 60 °C for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and then it was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a light yellow solid. The solid was slurried with isopropanol (300 mL), cooled in an ice bath, isolated by filtration, washed sequentially with cold isopropanol and diethyl ether, and then dried under vacuum  
20

at 80 °C for 2 hours to provide 53.8 g of *N*<sup>1</sup>-[(5,6-dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-2-methylpropane-1,2-diamine, mp 215 °C (decomposes).

Example 44

5      *N*-Cyclohexyl-*N'*-{2-[(5,6-dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino-1,1-dimethylethyl}urea

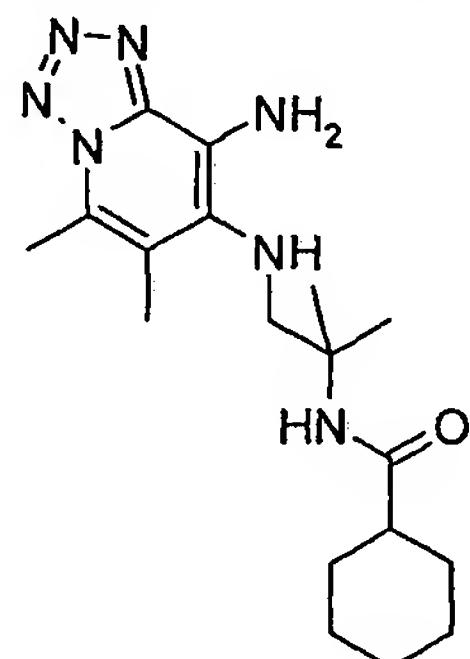


Cyclohexyl isocyanate (22.6 mL, 177 mmol) was added dropwise to a chilled (ice bath) solution of *N*<sup>1</sup>-[(5,6-dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)-2-methylpropane-1,2-diamine (50.7 g, 161 mmol) and triethylamine (67.1 mL, 482 mmol) in dichloromethane (507 mL). The reaction was allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 2 hours the reaction mixture was washed with water. The aqueous was extracted with dichloromethane. The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was stirred with hot acetonitrile (400 mL) and then allowed to cool to ambient temperature. A yellow solid was isolated by filtration and dried to provide 57.3 g of crude product. This material was stirred with isopropanol (400 mL) and then isolated by filtration to provide 51.1 g of *N*-cyclohexyl-*N'*-{2-[(5,6-dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino-1,1-dimethylethyl}urea as a yellow solid, mp 180.0-183.0 °C.

20,

## Example 45

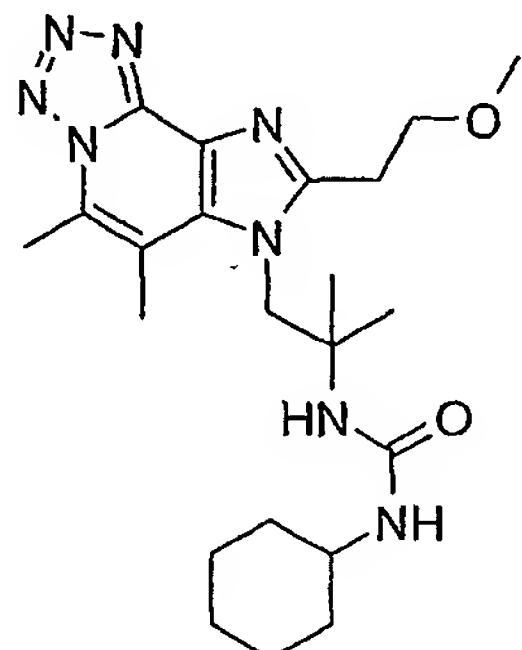
*N*-Cyclohexyl-*N'*-{2-[(8-amino-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-a]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}urea



5       *N*-Cyclohexyl-*N'*-{2-[(5,6-dimethyl-8-nitrotetrazolo[1,5-a]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}urea (49.4 g) and acetonitrile (1000 mL) were added to a 2 L Parr vessel. The starting material did not completely dissolve. The vessel was flushed with nitrogen and 5% platinum on carbon (5.0 g) was added to the mixture. The vessel was placed under hydrogen pressure (50 psi,  $3.4 \times 10^5$  Pa) for 4 hours. A white precipitate  
10 formed during the reduction. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (750 mL) and filtered through a layer of CELITE filter aid. The filter cake was washed with 10% methanol in dichloromethane (1000 mL). The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 50.5 g of *N*-cyclohexyl-*N'*-{2-[(8-amino-5,6-dimethyltetraazolo[1,5-a]pyridine-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}urea as a light green  
15 frothy solid.

## Example 46

*N*-Cyclohexyl-*N'*-{2-[8-(2-methoxyethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]-1,1-dimethylethyl}urea



## 5 Part A

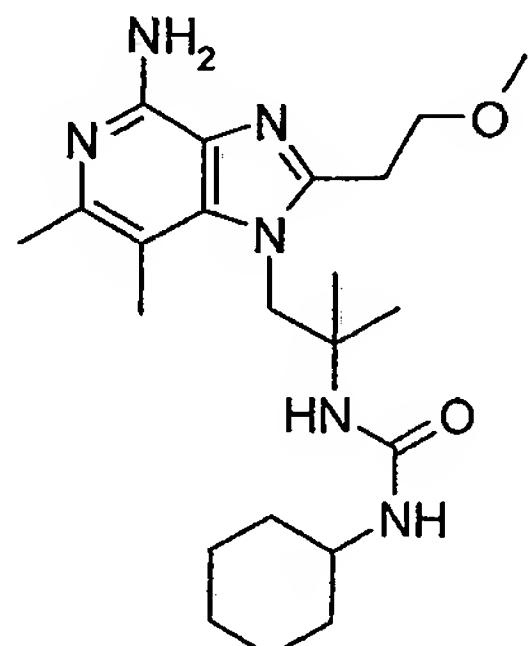
Hydrochloric acid gas was slowly added to a chilled (ice bath) mixture of 3-methoxypropionitrile (15 mL, 165 mmol), ethanol (9.6 mL of 200 proof, 165 mmol), and anhydrous toluene (100 mL) until the solution was saturated. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. Nitrogen was bubbled through the reaction 10 mixture for 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was diluted with diethyl ether (150 mL). The resulting white precipitate was isolated by filtration to provide 20.1 g of ethyl 3-methoxypropionimidate hydrochloride as a white solid.

## Part B

Under a nitrogen atmosphere *N*-cyclohexyl-*N'*-{2-[(8-amino-5,6-dimethyltetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl)amino]-1,1-dimethylethyl}urea (1.0 g, 2.67 mmol), ethyl 3-methoxypropionimidate hydrochloride (0.67 g, 4.0 mmol), and 1,2-dichloroethane (10 mL) were heated at 60 °C for 20 hours at which time analysis by HPLC indicated that the reaction was about 90% complete. The reaction was rerun on a larger scale (x 4 for all reagents). When the large scale reaction was complete, the two reaction mixtures were 20 combined and washed with water (100 mL). The aqueous was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 100 mL). The organics were combined, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide a brown oil. The oil was triturated with diethyl ether (150 mL) to provide a brown solid. This material was purified by column chromatography (silica gel eluting with 80/20 ethyl acetate/hexanes) to provide 25 3.6 g of *N*-cyclohexyl-*N'*-{2-[8-(2-methoxyethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]-1,1-dimethylethyl}urea as a light tan solid.

## Example 47

*N*-{2-[4-Amino-2-(2-methoxyethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]-1,1-dimethylethyl}-*N'*-cyclohexylurea



5

A Parr vessel was charged with *N*-cyclohexyl-*N'*-{2-[8-(2-methoxyethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]-1,1-dimethylethyl}urea (3.3 g, 7.46 mmol), concentrated hydrochloric acid (40 mL), and platinum (IV) oxide (0.66 g). The vessel was placed under hydrogen pressure (50 psi,  $3.4 \times 10^5$  Pa) for 5 days. The reaction mixture was filtered through a layer of CELITE filter aid. The filter cake was washed with concentrated hydrochloric acid. The pH of the filtrate was adjusted to 12 with saturated sodium carbonate. The mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 100 mL). The organics were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide about 2.66 g of a white solid. This material was recrystallized from isopropanol (35 mL) to provide 1.55 g of a white crystalline solid. The solid was dissolved in 50/50 water/ acetone (100 mL) and then the acetone was allowed to evaporate from the mixture. A precipitate was isolated by filtration and then dried under vacuum at 50 °C overnight to provide 1.06 g of *N*-{2-[4-amino-2-(2-methoxyethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-1-yl]-1,1-dimethylethyl}-*N'*-cyclohexylurea monohydrate as a white crystalline solid, mp 163.0-165.0 °C. Anal. calcd for: C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>2</sub>•1.00 H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 60.80; H, 8.81; N, 19.34. Found: C, 61.13; H, 9.18; N, 19.68.

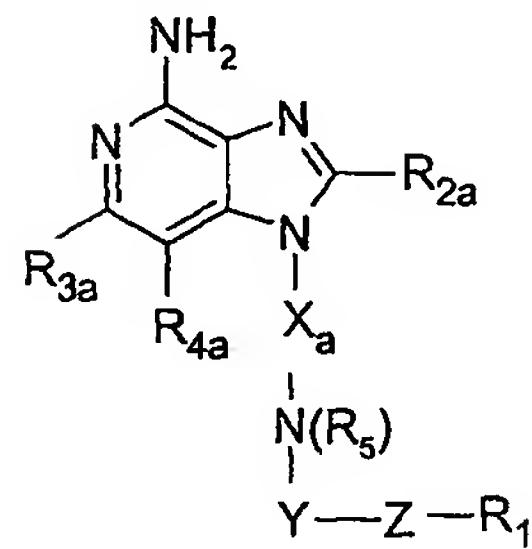
The complete disclosures of the patents, patent documents, and publications cited herein are incorporated by reference in their entirety as if each were individually incorporated. Various modifications and alterations to this invention will become

apparent to those skilled in the art without departing from the scope and spirit of this invention. It should be understood that this invention is not intended to be unduly limited by the illustrative embodiments and examples set forth herein and that such examples and embodiments are presented by way of example only with the scope of the invention intended to be limited only by the claims set forth herein as follows.

5

What is claimed is:

1. A process for preparing a  $1H$ -imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compound of the Formula Ia



5

Ia

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein

X<sub>a</sub> is alkylene;

Y is -CO-, -CS-, or -SO<sub>2</sub>-;

Z is a bond, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-CO-, or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-SO<sub>2</sub>-; with the proviso that when Y is  
10 -SO<sub>2</sub>- then Z is a bond or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-;

R<sub>1</sub> is aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, alkyl or alkenyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:

-alkyl;

-alkenyl;

15 -aryl;

-heteroaryl;

-heterocyclyl;

-substituted cycloalkyl;

-substituted aryl;

20 -substituted heteroaryl;

-substituted heterocyclyl;

-O-alkyl;

-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;

-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;

25 -O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;

-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;

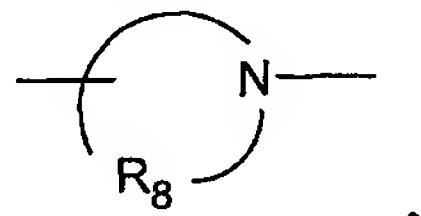
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;
  - O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;
  - COOH;
  - CO-O-alkyl;
  - 5 -CO-alkyl;
  - S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;
  - S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;
  - S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;
  - S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;
  - 10 -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;
  - S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;
  - S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;
  - (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;
  - 15 - (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-alkyl;
  - (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-aryl;
  - (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted aryl;
  - (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-heteroaryl;
  - (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted heteroaryl;
  - 20 -P(O)(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>;
  - N<sub>3</sub>;
  - halogen;
  - haloalkyl;
  - haloalkoxy;
  - 25 -CO-haloalkyl;
  - CO-haloalkoxy;
  - NO<sub>2</sub>;
  - CN;
  - OH;
  - 30 -SH; and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;
- R<sub>2a</sub> is selected from:
- hydrogen,

-alkyl,  
 -alkylene-O-alkyl,  
 -alkylene-S-alkyl, and  
 -alkyl substituted by one or more substituents selected from:

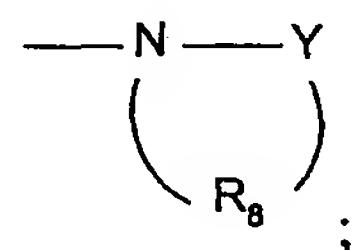
- 5            -OH,  
               -halogen,  
               -N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,  
               -CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,  
               -CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,
- 10          -SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,  
               -NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,  
               -NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,  
               -NR<sub>6</sub>-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,  
               -CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,
- 15          -CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,  
               -N<sub>3</sub>,  
               -heterocyclyl, and  
               -substituted heterocyclyl; and

R<sub>3a</sub> and R<sub>4a</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, halogen, alkoxy, 20 amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, and alkylthio;

R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure

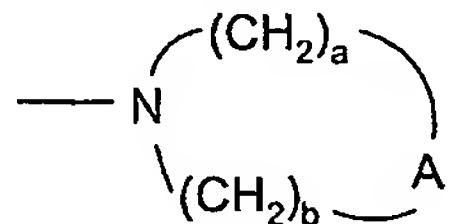


or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, and Z is a bond, then R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a 25 ring having the structure



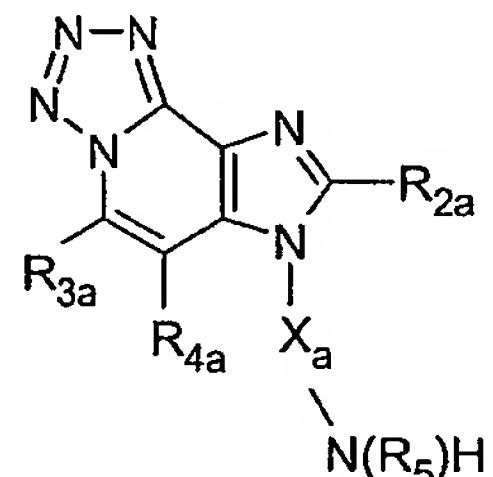
each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

R<sub>7</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or when R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



- 5 wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 6 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7; and

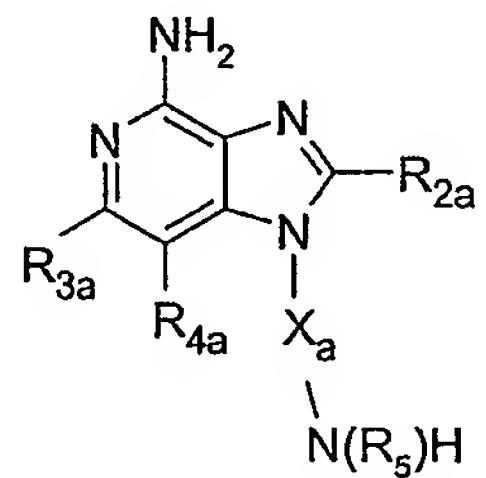
R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene;  
which process comprises the steps of:  
10 providing a compound of the Formula VIIIa



VIIIa

wherein R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X<sub>a</sub> are as defined above;

- 15 reductively removing the tetrazolo ring from the compound of Formula VIIIa to provide a compound of Formula Xa



Xa

wherein R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X<sub>a</sub> are as defined above; and

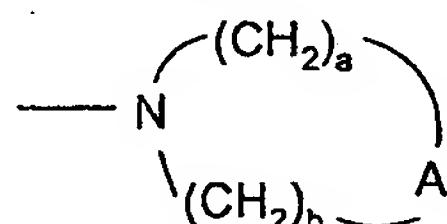
- reacting the compound of Formula Xa with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl,  
20 R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S,

$R_1$ -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S,  $R_1$ -S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl- $R_8$ -S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl,  $R_1$ -S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>- $R_1$ , and  $R_1(R_7)N$ -S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, wherein  $R_1$ ,  $R_7$ , and  $R_8$  are as defined above; to provide a compound of the Formula Ia or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

5        2.     The process of claim 1, further comprising the step of isolating the compound of Formula Ia or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

3.     The process of claim 1, wherein  $R_1$ ,  $R_{2a}$ ,  $R_{3a}$ ,  $R_{4a}$ ,  $R_5$ ,  $X_a$ , Y and Z are independently selected as follows:

10         $R_1$  is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> branched alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, and substituted cycloalkyl, or when  $R_1$  is C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, Z is -N( $R_7$ )-, and  $R_7$  is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms,  $R_1$  and  $R_7$  can join to form a ring having the structure



15        wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N( $R_6$ )-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 4 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7;

$R_{2a}$  is selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene-O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

$R_{3a}$  and  $R_{4a}$  are independently selected from hydrogen and methyl;

$R_5$  is selected from hydrogen and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

20         $X_a$  is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene;

          Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and

          Z is selected from a bond and -N( $R_7$ )- wherein  $R_7$  is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or  $R_7$  is joined with  $R_1$  as described above.

25

4.     The process of claim 3, wherein

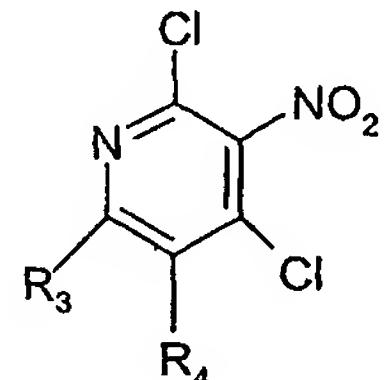
$R_1$  is selected from methyl, phenyl, and cyclohexyl, or  $R_1$  along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with  $R_7$  to form a morpholino ring;

$R_{2a}$  is selected from hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, sec-butyl, isobutyl, tert-butyl, 2-methoxyethyl, ethoxymethyl, and cyclopropylmethyl;

$R_{3a}$  and  $R_{4a}$  are methyl or  $R_{3a}$  is methyl and  $R_{4a}$  is hydrogen;  
 $R_5$  is hydrogen;  
 $X_a$  is selected from ethylene, propylene, and butylene;  
 $Y$  is selected from  $-CO-$  and  $-SO_2-$ ; and  
5       $Z$  is selected from a bond and  $-N(R_7)-$  wherein  $R_7$  is hydrogen, or  $R_7$  along with  
the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with  $R_1$  to form a morpholino ring.

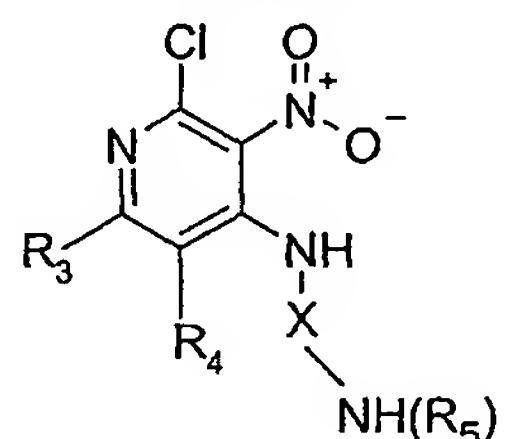
5.      The process of claim 1, further comprising one or more steps selected from steps  
(i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v), and (vi) wherein  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , and  $X$  are  $R_{2a}$ ,  $R_{3a}$ ,  $R_{4a}$ ,  $R_5$ , and  $X_a$ ,  
10     respectively, as defined in claim 1:

(i)     providing a compound of the Formula II



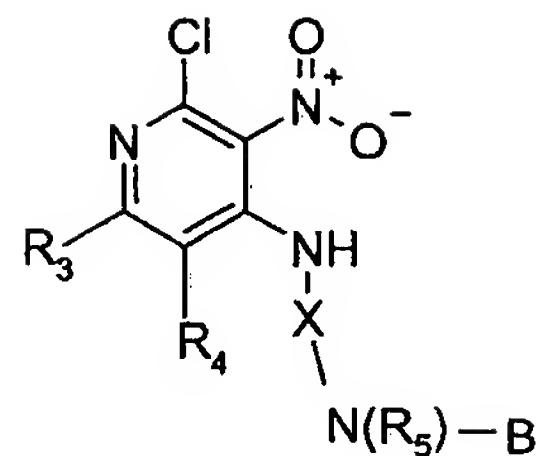
II;

(ii)    reacting the compound of Formula II (a) with an amine of the formula  
15      $N(R_5)-X-NH_2$  to provide a compound of Formula XIII

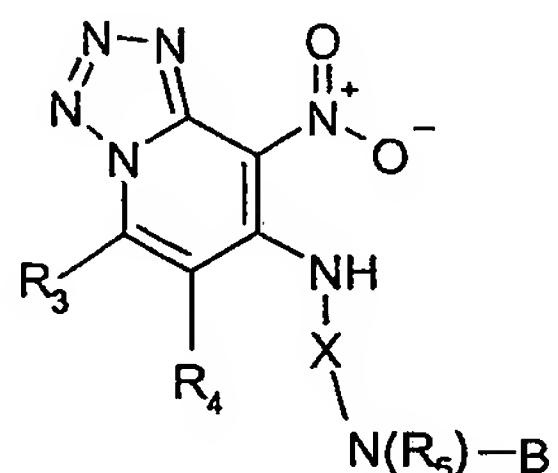


XIII

and protecting the  $-N(R_5)-$  amino group with a protecting group B, or (b) with an amine of  
the formula  $B-N(R_5)-X-NH_2$ ; wherein B is a protecting group for the  $-N(R_5)-$  amino group;  
20     to provide a compound of the Formula III



(iii) reacting a compound of the Formula III with an alkali metal azide to provide a compound of Formula IV

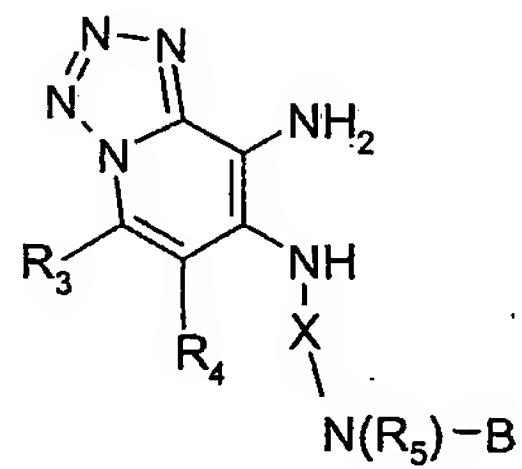


5

IV

wherein B is as defined above;

(iv) reducing a compound of the Formula IV to provide a compound of Formula V

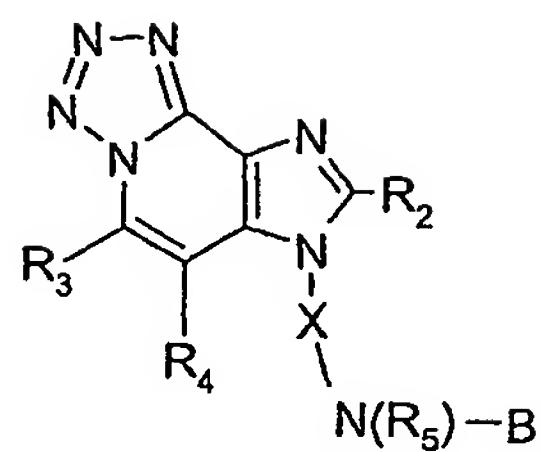


10

V

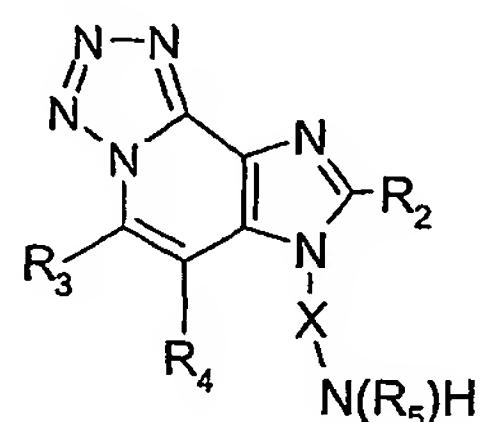
wherein B is as defined above;

(v) reacting a compound of Formula V (a) with a carboxylic acid of the formula R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide,  
15 R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>3</sub>, and R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>(O(O=)C-alkyl); or a mixture thereof, or (b) with an imidate of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub>, wherein R<sub>2</sub> is as defined above and each alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms; to provide a compound of the Formula VII



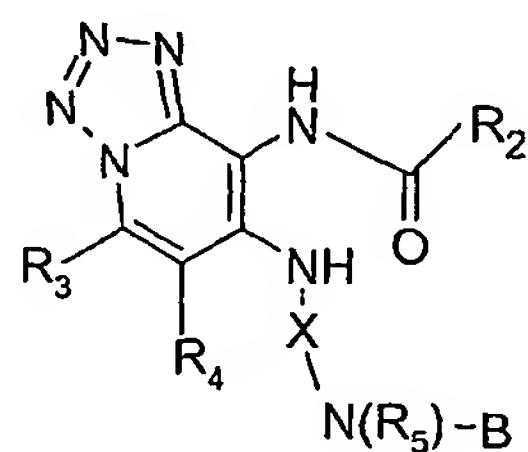
wherein B is as defined above; and

- 5 (vi) removing the amine protecting group from a compound of the Formula VII  
to provide a compound of Formula VIII



- 10 6. The process of claim 5, wherein in step (iii) the compound of Formula III is  
reacted with the alkali metal azide in the presence of cerium III chloride.

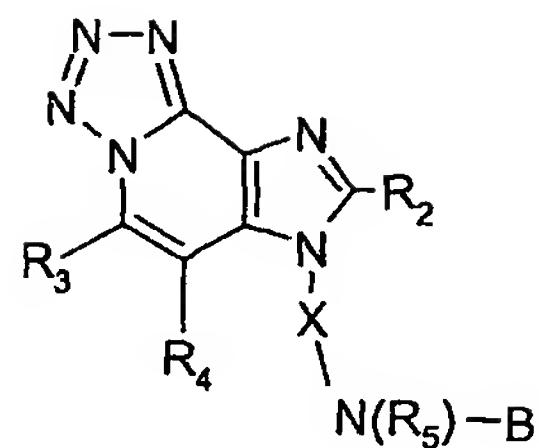
7. The process of claim 5, wherein step (v) includes the steps of  
(v-a) reacting a compound of the Formula V with a carboxylic acid of the formula  
R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H or the corresponding acyl halide to form a compound of Formula VI



15

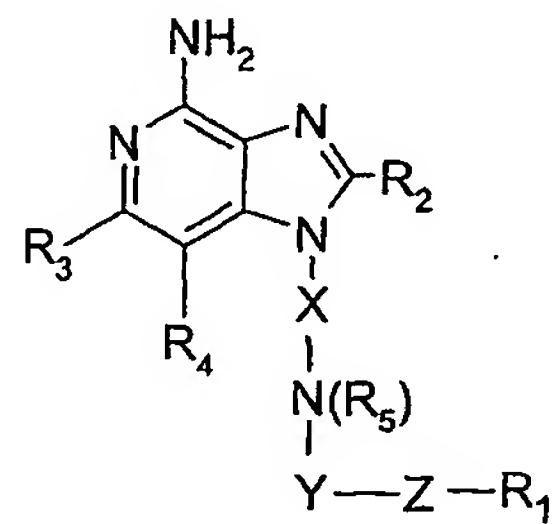
wherein B, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 5; and

- 20 (v-b) subjecting the compound of the Formula VI to cyclization conditions, during  
step (v-a) or subsequent to the completion of step (v-a), to provide a compound of  
Formula VII



wherein B, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 5.

- 5 8. A process for preparing a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compound of the  
Formula I



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein

- 10      X is alkylene or alkenylene;
- Y is -CO-, -CS-, or -SO<sub>2</sub>-;
- Z is a bond, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-CO-, or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-SO<sub>2</sub>-; with the proviso that when Y is -SO<sub>2</sub>- then Z is a bond or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-;
- R<sub>1</sub> is aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, alkyl or alkenyl, each of which may be  
15 unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:
- alkyl;
  - alkenyl;
  - aryl;
  - heteroaryl;
  - heterocyclyl;
  - substituted cycloalkyl;
  - substituted aryl;
  - substituted heteroaryl;
- 20

-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-O-alkyl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;  
5 -O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-COOH;  
10 -CO-O-alkyl;  
-CO-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;  
15 -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
20 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-aryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted aryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-heteroaryl;  
25 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted heteroaryl;  
-P(O)(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>;  
-N<sub>3</sub>;  
-halogen;  
-haloalkyl;  
30 -haloalkoxy;  
-CO-haloalkyl;  
-CO-haloalkoxy;

-NO<sub>2</sub>;  
-CN;  
-OH;  
-SH; and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

5 R<sub>2</sub> is selected from:

-hydrogen;  
-alkyl;  
-alkenyl;  
-aryl;  
-substituted aryl;  
-heteroaryl;  
-substituted heteroaryl;  
-alkylene-O-alkyl;  
-alkylene-S-alkyl;  
-alkylene-O-aryl;  
-alkylene-S-aryl;  
-alkylene-O-alkenyl;  
-alkylene-S- alkenyl; and  
-alkyl or alkenyl substituted by one or more substituents selected

10 from:

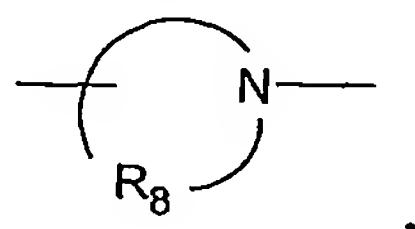
-OH;  
-halogen;  
-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-NR<sub>6</sub>-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-N<sub>3</sub>;

- aryl;
- substituted aryl;
- heteroaryl;
- substituted heteroaryl;
- 5 -heterocyclyl;
- substituted heterocyclyl;
- CO-aryl;
- CO-(substituted aryl);
- CO-heteroaryl; and
- 10 -CO-(substituted heteroaryl);

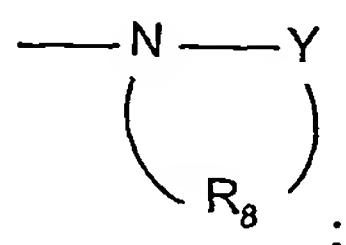
$R_3$  and  $R_4$  are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino and alkylthio;

$R_5$  is H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl, or when  $R_5$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl, then  $R_5$  can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure

15



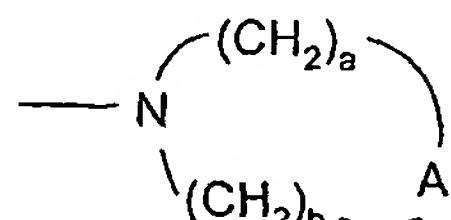
or when  $R_5$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl,  $R_1$  is alkyl, and Z is a bond, then  $R_5$  and  $R_1$  can join to form a ring having the structure



20

each  $R_6$  is independently H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl;

$R_7$  is H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or when  $R_1$  is alkyl, Z is  $-N(R_7)-$ , and  $R_7$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms,  $R_7$  and  $R_1$  can join to form a ring having the structure



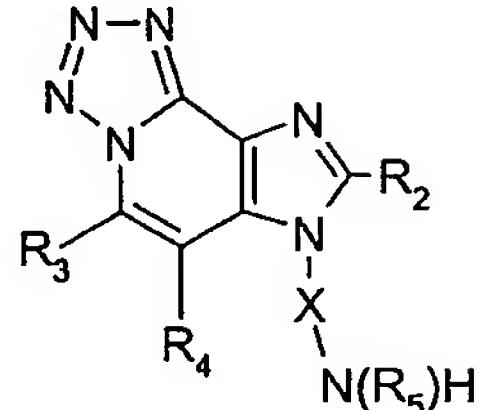
25

wherein A is selected from  $-O-$ ,  $-S(O)_{0-2}-$ ,  $-N(R_6)-$ , and  $-CH_2-$ ; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 6 with the proviso that  $a + b$  is less than or equal to 7; and

$R_8$  is  $C_{3-8}$  alkylene;

which process comprises the steps of:

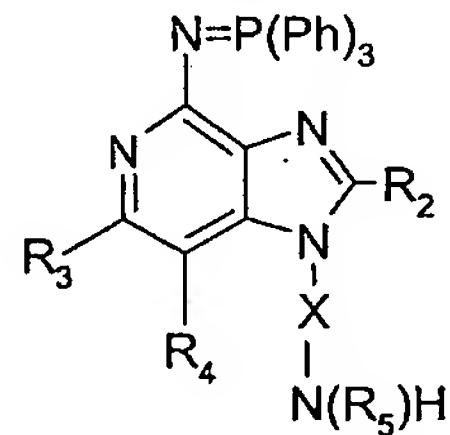
providing a compound of Formula VIII



VIII

5 wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above;

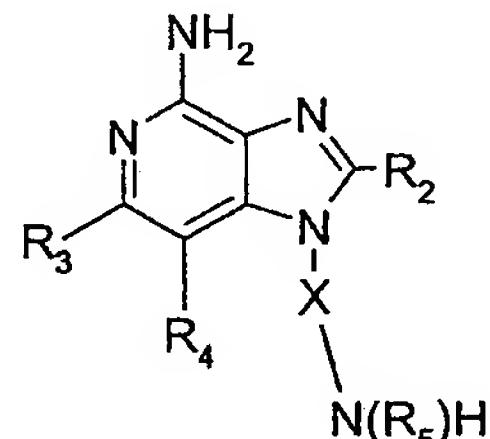
reacting the compound of the Formula VIII with triphenylphosphine to provide an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula IX



IX

10 wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above;

hydrolyzing the *N*-triphenylphosphinyl compound of the Formula IX to provide a compound of Formula X



X

15 wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above; and

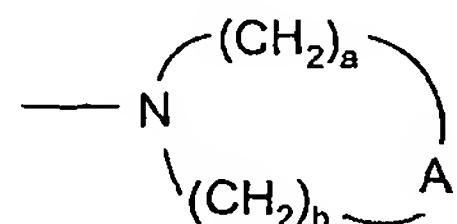
reacting the compound of the Formula X with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl,

20 R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl; wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, and R<sub>8</sub> are as defined above; to provide a compound of the Formula I.

9. The process of claim 8, further comprising the step of isolating the compound of Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

5 10. The process of claim 8, wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y and Z are independently selected as follows:

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> branched alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, and substituted cycloalkyl, or when R<sub>1</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, R<sub>1</sub> and 10 R<sub>7</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2-</sub>, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 4 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7;

15 R<sub>2</sub> is selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene-O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen and methyl;

R<sub>5</sub> is selected from hydrogen and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

X is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkenylene;

Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and

Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which 20 may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or R<sub>7</sub> is joined with R<sub>1</sub> as described above.

11. The process of claim 10, wherein

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from methyl, phenyl, and cyclohexyl, or R<sub>1</sub> along with the nitrogen 25 atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>7</sub> to form a morpholino ring;

R<sub>2</sub> is selected from hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, *sec*-butyl, isobutyl, *tert*-butyl, 2-methoxyethyl, ethoxymethyl, and cyclopropylmethyl;

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are methyl or R<sub>3</sub> is methyl and R<sub>4</sub> is hydrogen;

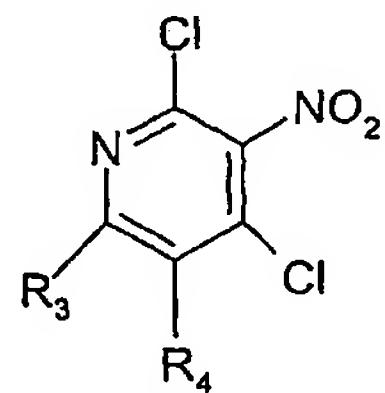
R<sub>5</sub> is hydrogen;

30 X is selected from ethylene, propylene, and butylene;

Y is selected from  $\text{--CO-}$  and  $\text{--SO}_2\text{-}$ ; and  
 Z is selected from a bond and  $\text{--N}(\text{R}_7)\text{-}$  wherein  $\text{R}_7$  is hydrogen, or  $\text{R}_7$  along with  
 the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with  $\text{R}_1$  to form a morpholino ring.

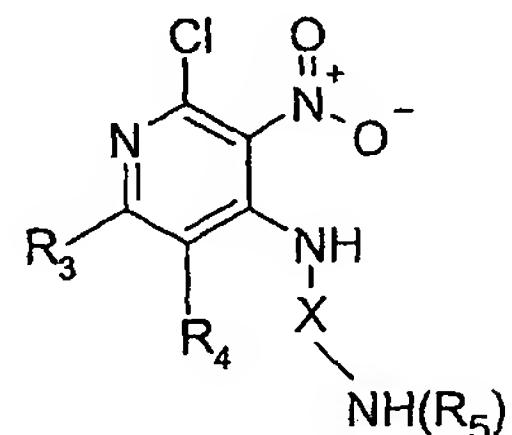
5 12. The process of claim 8, further comprising one or more steps selected from (i), (ii),  
 (iii), (iv), (v), and (vi) wherein  $\text{R}_2$ ,  $\text{R}_3$ ,  $\text{R}_4$ ,  $\text{R}_5$ , and X are as defined in claim 8:

(i) providing a compound of the Formula II



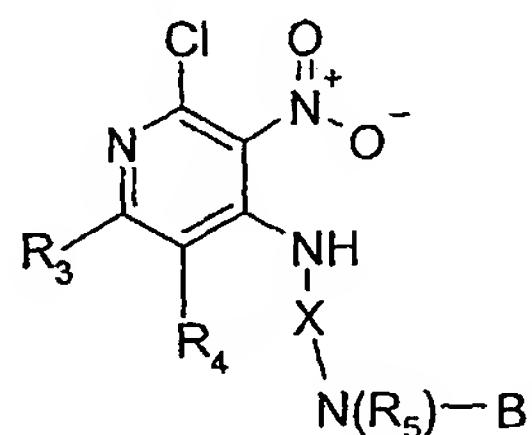
II;

10 (ii) reacting the compound of Formula II (a) with an amine of the formula  
 $\text{N}(\text{R}_5)\text{-X-NH}_2$  to provide a compound of Formula XIII



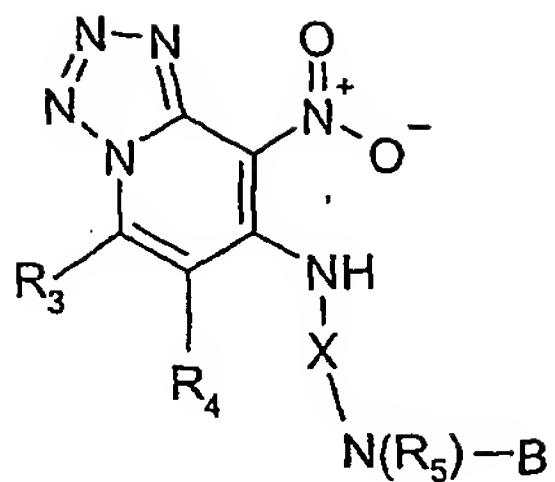
XIII

15 and protecting the  $\text{-N}(\text{R}_5)\text{-}$  amino group with a protecting group B, or (b) with an amine of  
 the formula  $\text{B-N}(\text{R}_5)\text{-X-NH}_2$ ; wherein B is a protecting group for the  $\text{-N}(\text{R}_5)\text{-}$  amino group;  
 to provide a compound of the Formula III



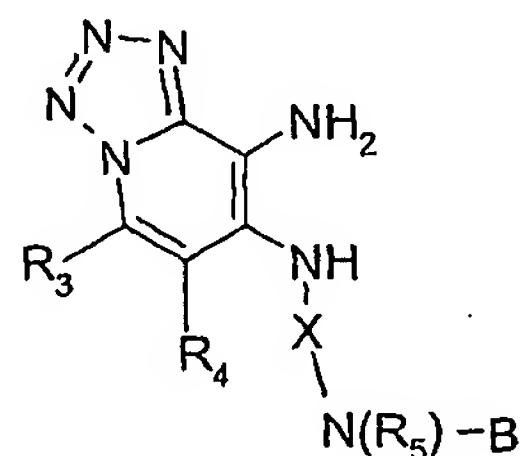
III;

20 (iii) reacting a compound of the Formula III with an alkali metal azide to provide  
 a compound of Formula IV



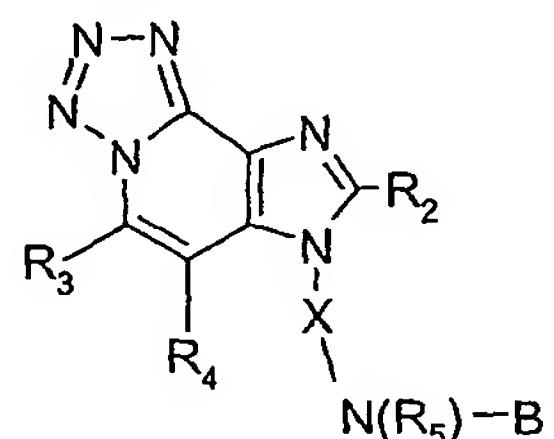
wherein B is as defined above;

- (iv) reducing a compound of the Formula IV to provide a compound of  
5 Formula V



wherein B is as defined above;

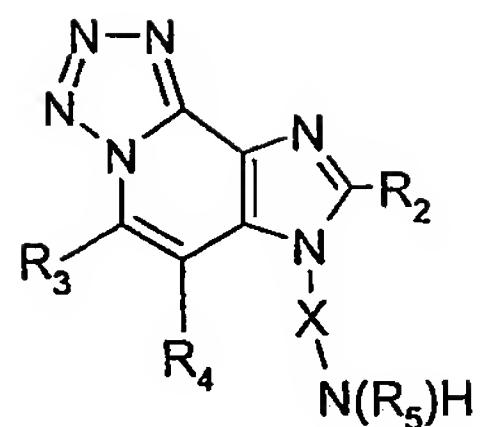
- (v) reacting a compound of Formula V (a) with a carboxylic acid of the formula  
10 R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide,  
R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>3</sub>, and R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>(O(O=)C-alkyl); or a mixture thereof, or (b) with an  
imide of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub>, wherein R<sub>2</sub> is as defined in claim 8, and each  
alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms; to provide a compound of Formula VII



15

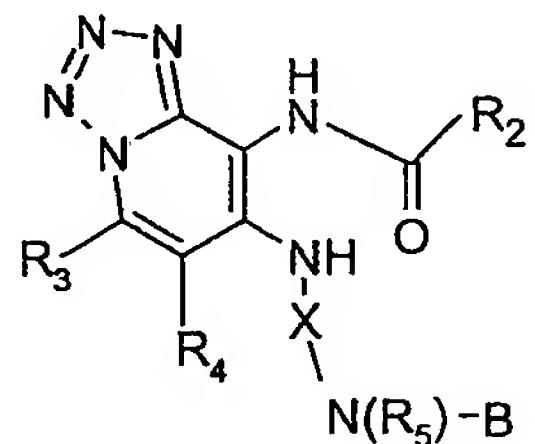
wherein B is as defined above; and

- (vi) removing the amine protecting group from a compound of the Formula VII  
to provide a compound of Formula VIII



13. The process of claim 12, wherein in step (iii) the compound of Formula III is  
5 reacted with the alkali metal azide in the presence of cerium III chloride.

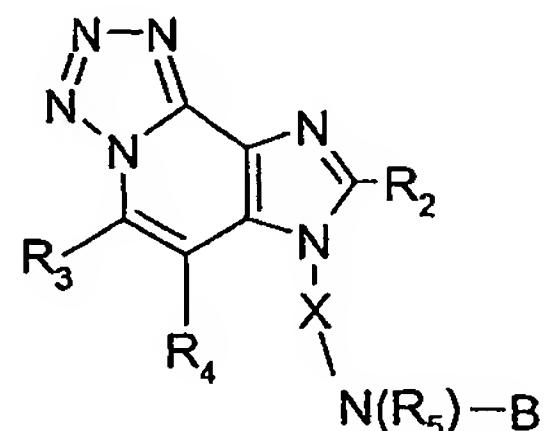
14. The process of claim 12, wherein step (v) includes the steps of  
(v-a) reacting a compound of the Formula V with a carboxylic acid of the formula  
R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H or the corresponding acyl halide to form a compound of Formula VI



10

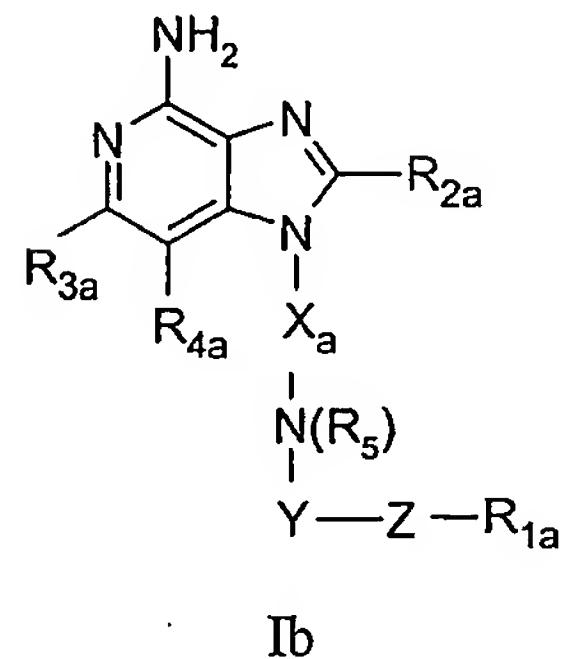
wherein B, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 12; and

(v-b) subjecting the compound of the Formula VI to cyclization conditions, during  
step (v-a) or subsequent to the completion of step (v-a), to provide a compound of  
15 Formula VII



wherein B, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 12.

15. A process for preparing a  $1H$ -imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compound of the Formula Ib



Ib

5

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein

X<sub>a</sub> is alkylene;

Y is -CO-, -CS-, or -SO<sub>2</sub>-;

Z is a bond, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-CO-, or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-SO<sub>2</sub>-; with the proviso that when Y is  
10 -SO<sub>2</sub>- then Z is a bond or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-;

R<sub>1a</sub> is alkyl or heterocyclyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:

-alkyl;

-heterocyclyl;

-substituted cycloalkyl;

-substituted heterocyclyl;

-O-alkyl;

-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;

-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;

-COOH;

-CO-O-alkyl;

-CO-alkyl;

-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;

-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;

-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;

-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;

-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;

15

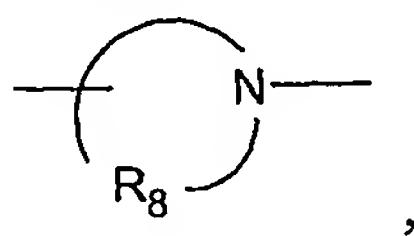
20

25

- $(\text{alkylene})_{0-1}\text{-NR}_6\text{-CO-alkyl}$ ;
  - $\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{O-alkyl})_2$ ;
  - $\text{N}_3$ ;
  - halogen;
  - 5 -haloalkyl;
  - haloalkoxy;
  - $\text{CO-haloalkyl}$ ;
  - $\text{CO-haloalkoxy}$ ;
  - $\text{NO}_2$ ;
  - 10 -CN;
  - OH;
  - SH; and in the case of alkyl and heterocyclyl, oxo;
- $\text{R}_{2a}$  is selected from:
- hydrogen,
  - 15 -alkyl,
  - alkylene-O-alkyl,
  - alkylene-S-alkyl, and
  - alkyl substituted by one or more substituents selected from:
    - OH,
    - 20 -halogen,
    - $\text{N}(\text{R}_6)_2$ ,
    - $\text{CO-N}(\text{R}_6)_2$ ,
    - $\text{CS-N}(\text{R}_6)_2$ ,
    - $\text{SO}_2\text{-N}(\text{R}_6)_2$ ,
  - 25 - $\text{NR}_6\text{-CO-C}_{1-10}\text{ alkyl}$ ,
  - $\text{NR}_6\text{-CS-C}_{1-10}\text{ alkyl}$ ,
  - $\text{NR}_6\text{-SO}_2\text{-C}_{1-10}\text{ alkyl}$ ,
  - $\text{CO-C}_{1-10}\text{ alkyl}$ ,
  - $\text{CO-O-C}_{1-10}\text{ alkyl}$ ,
  - 30 - $\text{N}_3$ ,
  - heterocyclyl, and
  - substituted heterocyclyl; and

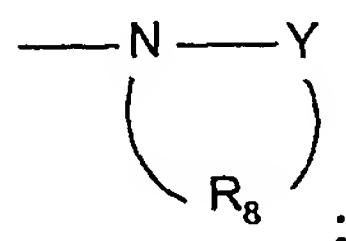
$R_{3a}$  and  $R_{4a}$  are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, and alkylthio;

$R_5$  is H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl, or when  $R_5$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl, then  $R_5$  can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure



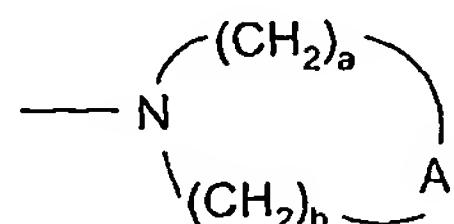
5

or when  $R_5$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl,  $R_1$  is alkyl, and Z is a bond, then  $R_5$  and  $R_1$  can join to form a ring having the structure



each  $R_6$  is independently H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl;

10  $R_7$  is H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or when  $R_1$  is alkyl, Z is  $-N(R_7)-$ , and  $R_7$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms,  $R_7$  and  $R_1$  can join to form a ring having the structure

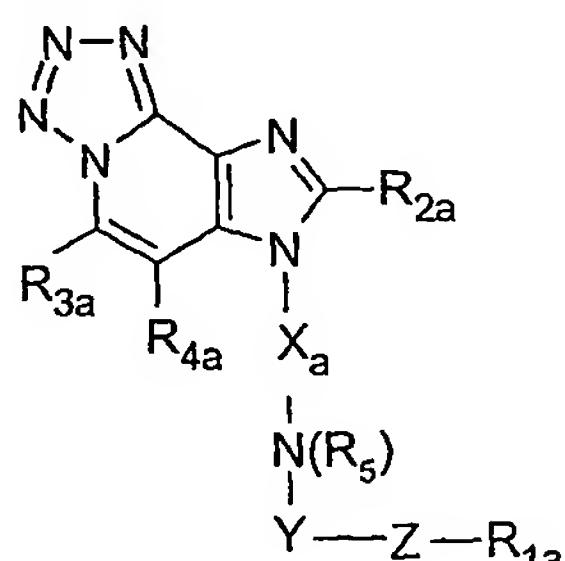


15 wherein A is selected from  $-O-$ ,  $-S(O)_{0-2}-$ ,  $-N(R_6)-$ , and  $-CH_2-$ ; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 6 with the proviso that  $a + b$  is less than or equal to 7; and

$R_8$  is  $C_{3-8}$  alkylene;

which process comprises the steps of:

providing a compound of the Formula XIa



20

XIa

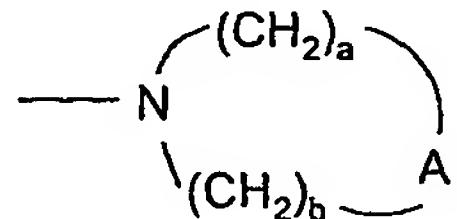
wherein  $R_{1a}$ ,  $R_{2a}$ ,  $R_{3a}$ ,  $R_{4a}$ ,  $R_5$ ,  $X_a$ ,  $Y$ , and  $Z$  are as defined above; and

reductively removing the tetrazolo ring from the compound of Formula XIa to provide a compound of Formula Ib or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

16. The process of claim 15, further comprising the step of isolating the compound of  
5 Formula Ib or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

17. The process of claim 15, wherein R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X<sub>a</sub>, Y and Z are independently selected as follows:

R<sub>1a</sub> is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> branched alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, cycloalkyl, and substituted cycloalkyl, or when R<sub>1a</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, R<sub>1a</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 4 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7;

R<sub>2a</sub> is selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene-O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

R<sub>3a</sub> and R<sub>4a</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen and methyl;

R<sub>5</sub> is selected from hydrogen and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

X<sub>a</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene;

Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and

Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or R<sub>7</sub> is joined with R<sub>1a</sub> as described above.

25 18. The process of claim 17, wherein

R<sub>1a</sub> is selected from methyl, and cyclohexyl, or R<sub>1a</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>7</sub> to form a morpholino ring;

R<sub>2a</sub> is selected from hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, sec-butyl, isobutyl, tert-butyl, 2-methoxyethyl, ethoxymethyl, and cyclopropylmethyl;

R<sub>3a</sub> and R<sub>4a</sub> are methyl or R<sub>3a</sub> is methyl and R<sub>4a</sub> is hydrogen;

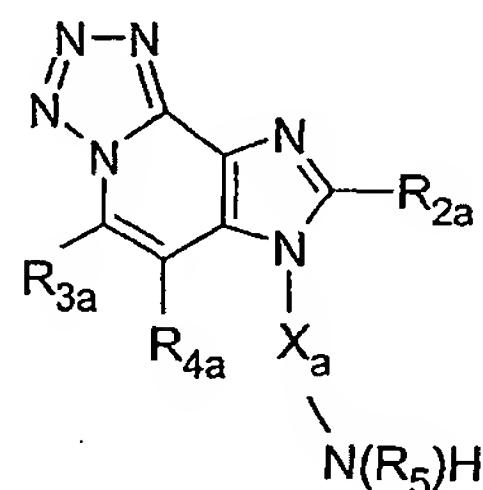
R<sub>5</sub> is hydrogen;

X<sub>a</sub> is selected from ethylene, propylene, and butylene;

Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and

Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen or R<sub>7</sub> along with the  
5 nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>1a</sub> to form a morpholino ring.

19. The process of claim 15, further comprising the steps of:  
providing a compound of the Formula VIIIa



10

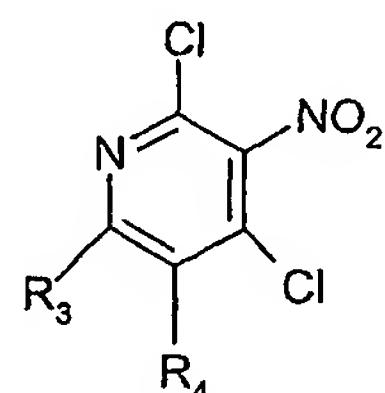
VIIIa

wherein R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X<sub>a</sub> are as defined in claim 15; and

reacting the compound of Formula VIIIa with a compound selected from R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1a</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>1a</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>1a</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1a</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1a</sub>-N=C=S,  
15 R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1a</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1a</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, R<sub>1a</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1a</sub>, and R<sub>1a</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, wherein R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, and R<sub>8</sub> are as defined in claim 15, to provide a compound of Formula XIa defined in claim 15.

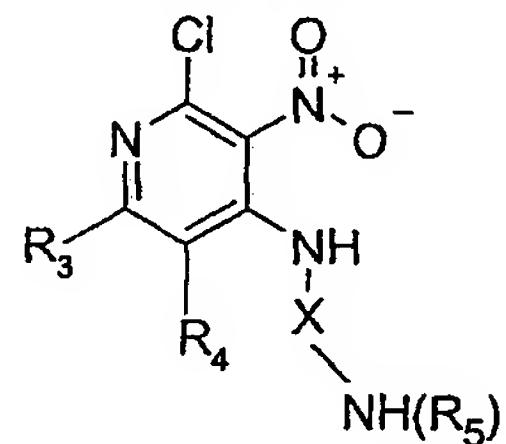
20. The process of claim 19, further comprising one or more steps selected from steps  
20 (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v), and (vi) wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X<sub>a</sub>, respectively, as defined in claim 19:

- (i) providing a compound of Formula II



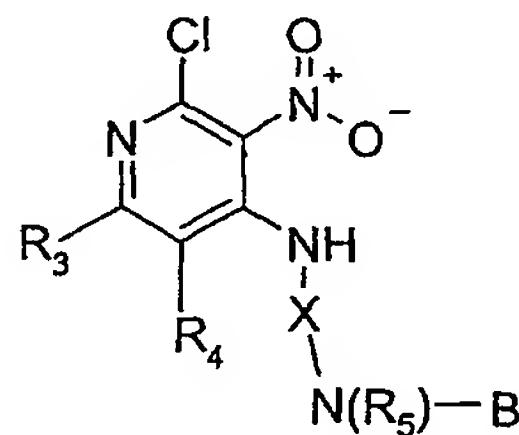
II;

(ii) reacting the compound of Formula II (a) with an amine of the formula  $N(R_5)-X-NH_2$  to provide a compound of Formula XIII



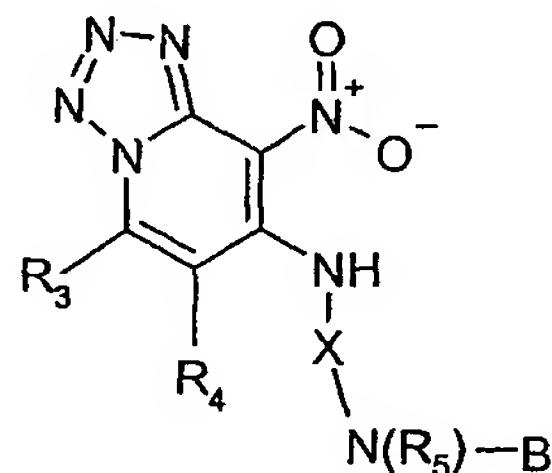
XIII

5 and protecting the  $-N(R_5)-$  amino group with a protecting group B, or (b) with an amine of the formula  $B-N(R_5)-X-NH_2$ ; wherein B is a protecting group for the  $-N(R_5)-$  amino group; to provide a compound of the Formula III



III;

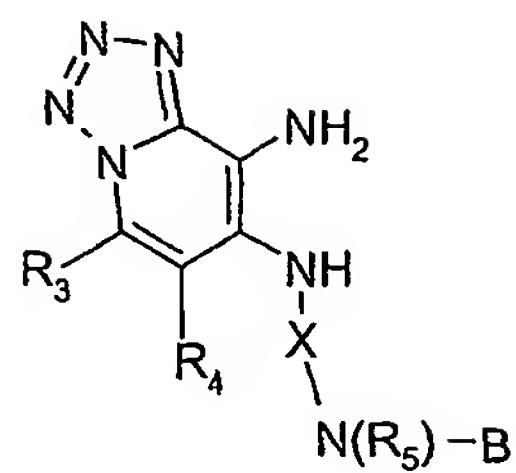
10 (iii) reacting a compound of the Formula III with an alkali metal azide to provide a compound of Formula IV



IV

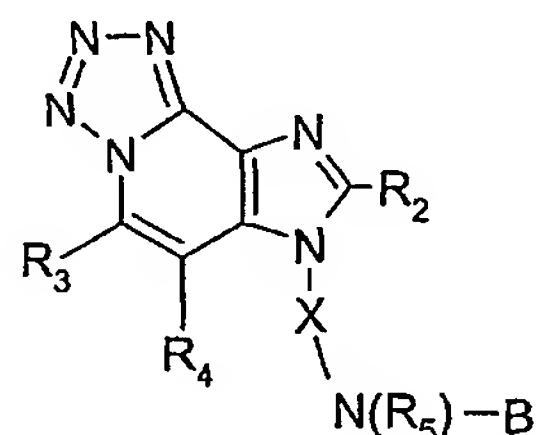
wherein B is as defined above;

15 (iv) reducing a compound of the Formula IV to provide a compound of Formula V



wherein B is as defined above;

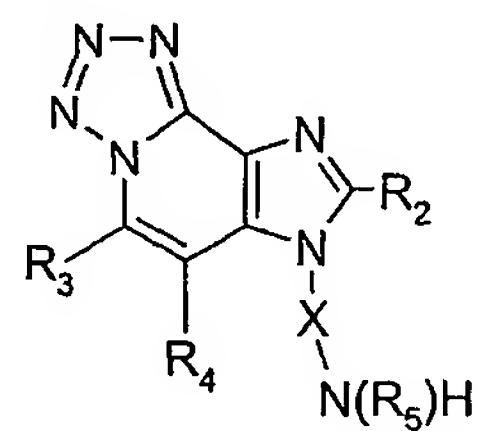
- 5 (v) reacting a compound of Formula V (a) with a carboxylic acid of the formula  $R_2CO_2H$ ; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide,  $R_2C(O\text{-alkyl})_3$ , and  $R_2C(O\text{-alkyl})_2(O(O=)C\text{-alkyl})$ ; or a mixture thereof, or (b) with an imidate of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub>, wherein R<sub>2</sub> is as defined in claim 19 and each alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms; to provide a compound of the Formula VII



10

wherein B is as defined above; and

- (vi) removing the amine protecting group from a compound of the Formula VII to provide a compound of the Formula VIII

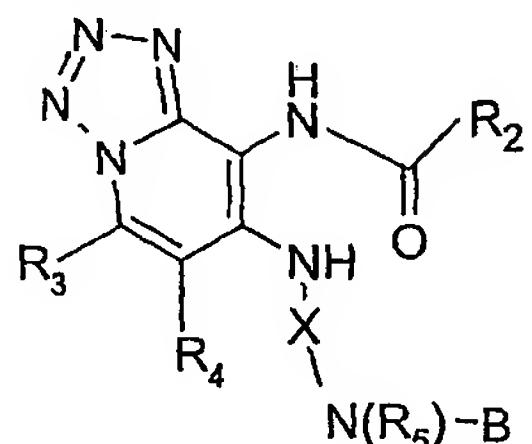


15

21. The process of claim 20, wherein in step (iii) the compound of Formula III is reacted with the alkali metal azide in the presence of cerium III chloride.

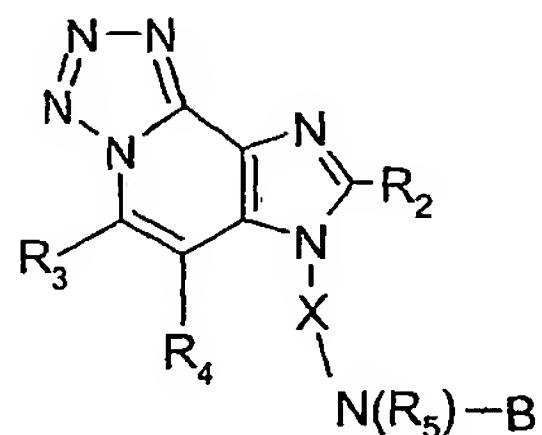
20 22. The process of claim 20, wherein step (v) includes the steps of

(v-a) reacting a compound of the Formula V with a carboxylic acid of the formula  $R_2CO_2H$  or the corresponding acyl halide to form a compound of the Formula VI



5 wherein B,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , and X are as defined in claim 20; and

(v-b) subjecting the compound of the Formula VI to cyclization conditions, during step (v-a) or subsequent to the completion of step (v-a), to provide a compound of Formula VII



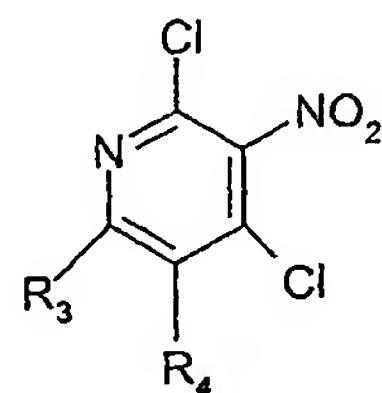
10

wherein B,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , and X are as defined in claim 20.

23. The process of claim 15, further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (i), (ii), (iii), (x), (xi), (xii), and (xiii) wherein  $R_1$ ,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , X, Y, and Z are  $R_{1a}$ ,  $R_{2a}$ ,  $R_{3a}$ ,  $R_{4a}$ ,  $R_5$ ,  $X_a$ , Y, and Z, respectively, as defined in claim 15:

15

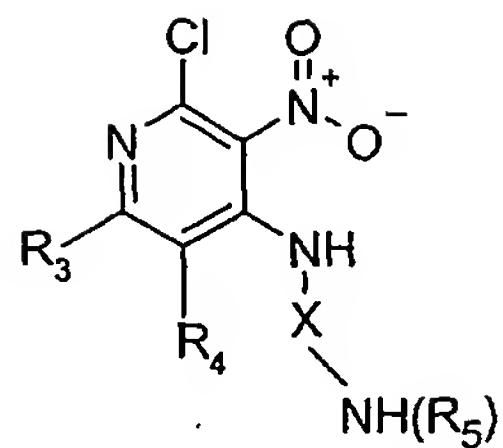
(i) providing a compound of Formula II



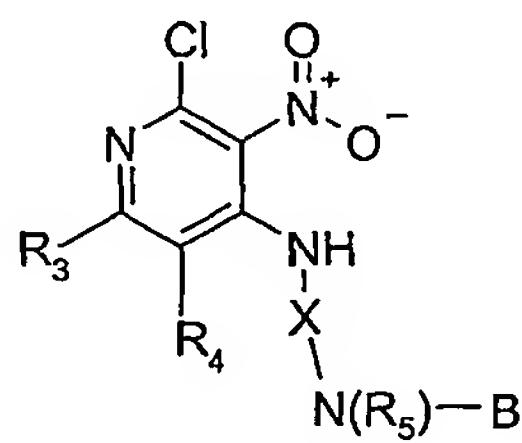
II;

20

(ii) reacting the compound of Formula II (a) with an amine of the formula  $N(R_5)-X-NH_2$  to provide a compound of Formula XIII

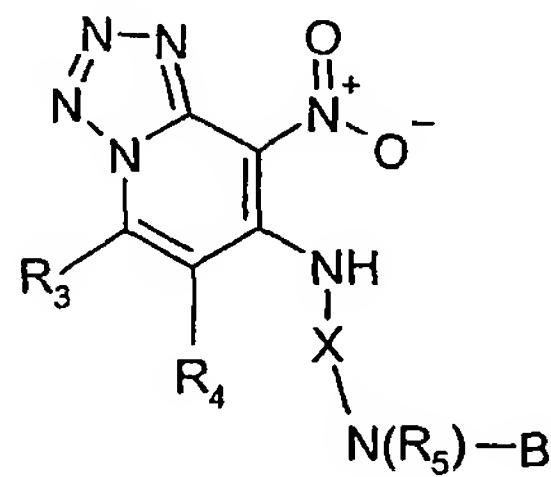


and protecting the -N(R<sub>5</sub>)- amino group with a protecting group B, or (b) with an amine of the formula B-N(R<sub>5</sub>)-X-NH<sub>2</sub>; wherein B is a protecting group for the -N(R<sub>5</sub>)- amino group; to provide a compound of the Formula III



III;

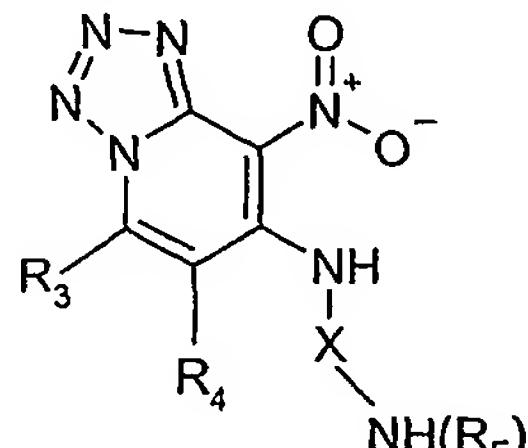
(iii) reacting a compound of the Formula III with an alkali metal azide to provide a compound of Formula IV



IV

wherein B is as defined above;

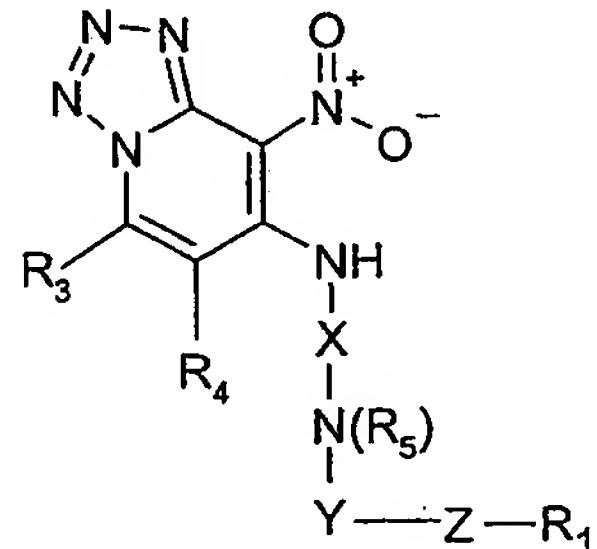
(x) removing the amine protecting group from the compound of Formula IV to provide a compound of the Formula XIV



XIV;

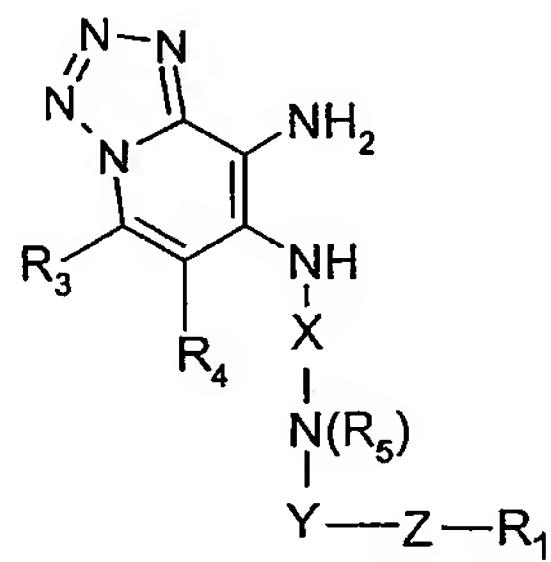
15

(xi) reacting the compound of Formula XIV with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl; wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are as defined in claim 15; to provide a compound of Formula XV



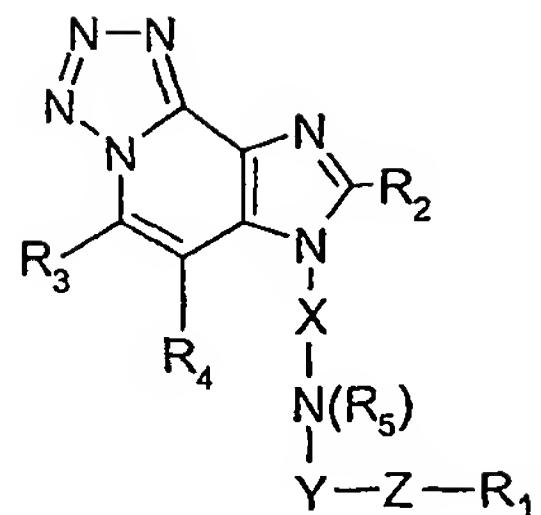
XV;

(xii) reducing the compound of Formula XV to provide a compound of the  
10 Formula XVI



XVI; and

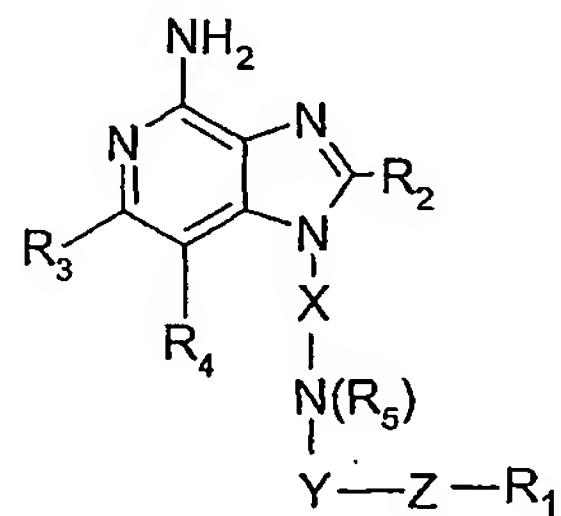
(xiii) reacting a compound of Formula XVI (a) with a carboxylic acid of the formula R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide, R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>3</sub>, and R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>(O(O=)C-alkyl); or a mixture thereof, or (b) with an imidate of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub>, wherein each alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms; to provide a compound of the Formula XI



XI.

24. The process of claim 23, wherein in step (iii) the compound of Formula III is  
5 reacted with the alkali metal azide in the presence of cerium III chloride.

25. A process for preparing a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compound of the  
Formula I



10

I

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein

X is alkylene or alkenylene;

Y is -CO-, -CS-, or -SO2-;

15 Z is a bond, -N(R7)-, -N(R7)-CO-, or -N(R7)-SO2-; with the proviso that when Y is -SO2- then Z is a bond or -N(R7)-;

R1 is aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, alkyl or alkenyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:

-alkyl;

-alkenyl;

20 -aryl;

-heteroaryl;

-heterocyclyl;

-substituted cycloalkyl;  
-substituted aryl;  
-substituted heteroaryl;  
-substituted heterocyclyl;  
5 -O-alkyl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
10 -O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-COOH;  
-CO-O-alkyl;  
-CO-alkyl;  
15 -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
20 -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-alkyl;  
25 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-aryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted aryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-heteroaryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted heteroaryl;  
-P(O)(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>;  
30 -N<sub>3</sub>;  
-halogen;  
-haloalkyl;

-haloalkoxy;  
-CO-haloalkyl;  
-CO-haloalkoxy;  
-NO<sub>2</sub>;  
5 -CN;  
-OH;  
-SH; and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

R<sub>2</sub> is selected from:

10 -hydrogen;  
-alkyl;  
-alkenyl;  
-aryl;  
-substituted aryl;  
-heteroaryl;  
15 -substituted heteroaryl;  
-alkylene-O-alkyl;  
-alkylene-S-alkyl;  
-alkylene-O-aryl;  
-alkylene-S-aryl;  
20 -alkylene-O-alkenyl;  
-alkylene-S- alkenyl; and  
-alkyl or alkenyl substituted by one or more substituents selected

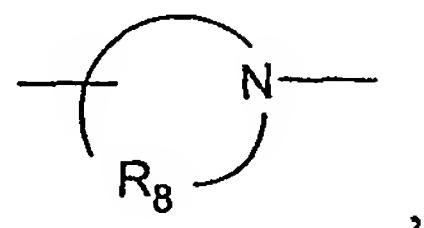
from:

25 -OH;  
-halogen;  
-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
30 -NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-NR<sub>6</sub>-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

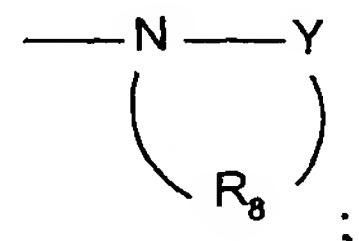
- CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
- CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
- N<sub>3</sub>;
- aryl;
- 5 -substituted aryl;
- heteroaryl;
- substituted heteroaryl;
- heterocyclyl;
- substituted heterocyclyl;
- 10 -CO-aryl;
- CO-(substituted aryl);
- CO-heteroaryl; and
- CO-(substituted heteroaryl);

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, 15 alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino and alkylthio;

R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure

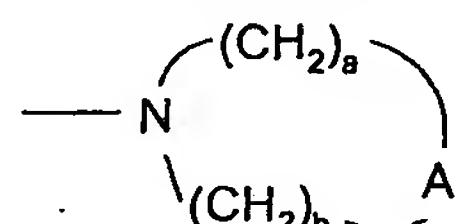


or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, and Z is a bond, then R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a 20 ring having the structure



each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

R<sub>7</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or when R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or 25 more heteroatoms, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure

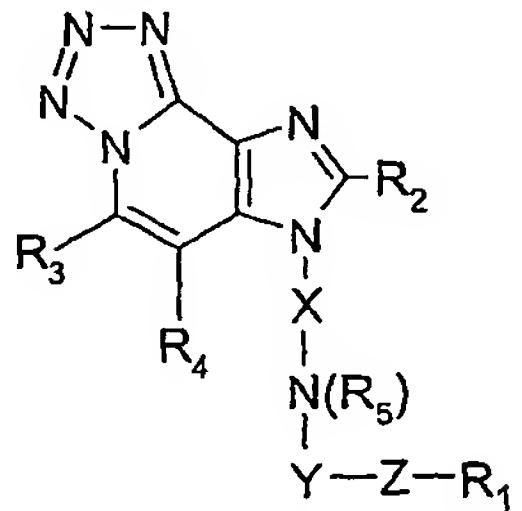


wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2-</sub>, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 6 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7; and

R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene;

5 which process comprises the steps of:

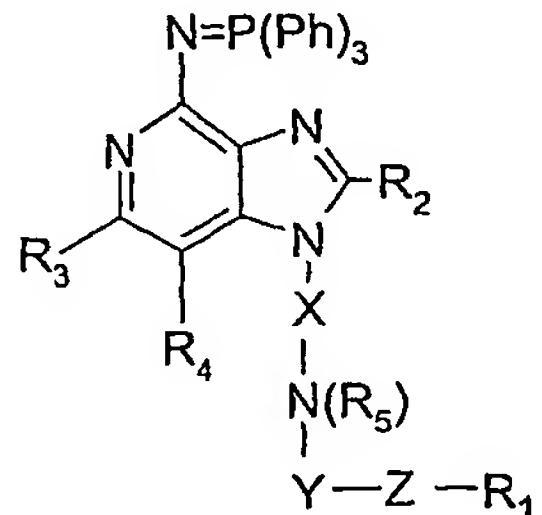
providing a compound of Formula XI



XI

wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y, and Z are as defined above;

10 reacting the compound of the Formula XI with triphenylphosphine to provide an N-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula XII



XII

wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y, and Z are as defined above; and

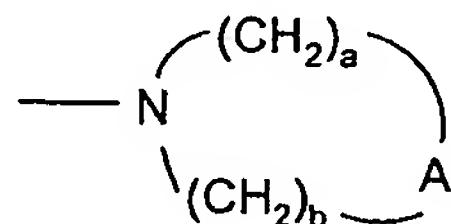
15 hydrolyzing the N-triphenylphosphinyl compound of the Formula XII to provide a compound of Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

26. The process of claim 25, further comprising the step of isolating the compound of the Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20

27. The process of claim 25, wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y and Z are independently selected as follows:

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> branched alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, and substituted cycloalkyl, or when R<sub>1</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



5

wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 4 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7;

R<sub>2</sub> is selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene-O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen and methyl;

10

R<sub>5</sub> is selected from hydrogen and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

X is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkenylene;

Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and

Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or R<sub>7</sub> is joined with R<sub>1</sub> as described

15

above.

28. The process of claim 27, wherein

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from methyl, phenyl, and cyclohexyl, or R<sub>1</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>7</sub> to form a morpholino ring;

20

R<sub>2</sub> is selected from hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, *sec*-butyl, isobutyl, *tert*-butyl, 2-methoxyethyl, ethoxymethyl, and cyclopropylmethyl;

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are methyl or R<sub>3</sub> is methyl and R<sub>4</sub> is hydrogen;

R<sub>5</sub> is hydrogen;

X is selected from ethylene, propylene, and butylene;

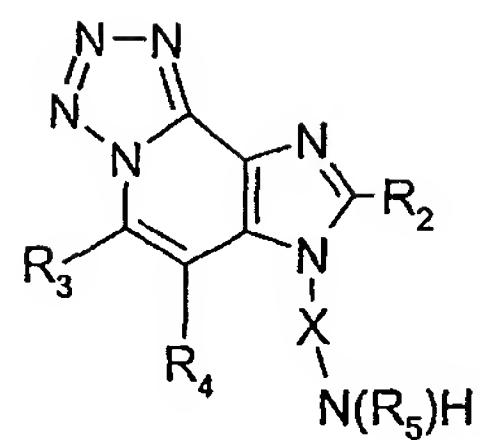
25

Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and

Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen or R<sub>7</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>1</sub> to form a morpholino ring.

29. The process of claim 25, further comprising the steps of

30 providing a compound of the Formula VIII



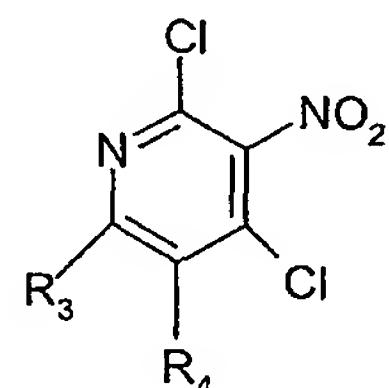
wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 25; and

reacting the compound of the Formula VIII with a compound selected from  
 5 R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>,  
 R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O,  
 R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl,  
 R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, and R<sub>8</sub> are as defined in claim  
 25, to provide a compound of Formula XI defined in claim 25.

10

30. The process of claim 29, further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v), and (vi) wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 29:

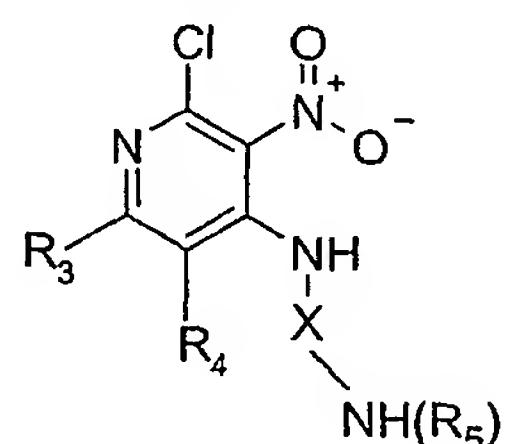
(i) providing a compound of Formula II



15

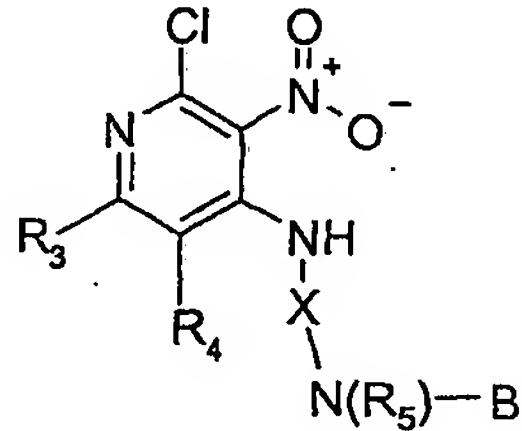
II;

(ii) reacting the compound of Formula II (a) with an amine of the formula N(R<sub>5</sub>)-X-NH<sub>2</sub> to provide a compound of Formula XIII



XIII

and protecting the  $-N(R_5)-$  amino group with a protecting group B, or (b) with an amine of the formula  $B-N(R_5)-X-NH_2$ ; wherein B is a protecting group for the  $-N(R_5)-$  amino group; to provide a compound of the Formula III

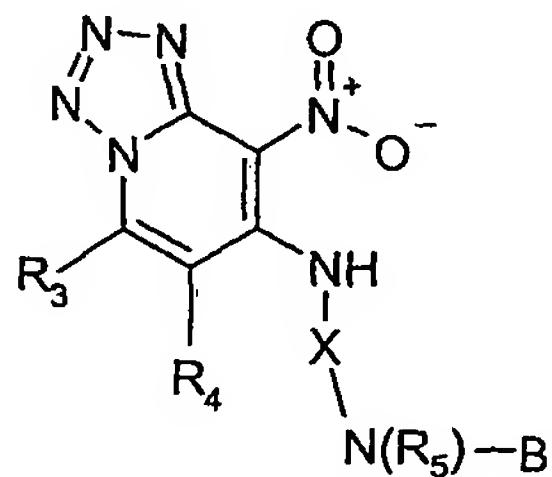


5

III

wherein B is as defined above;

- (iii) reacting a compound of the Formula III with an alkali metal azide to provide a compound of Formula IV

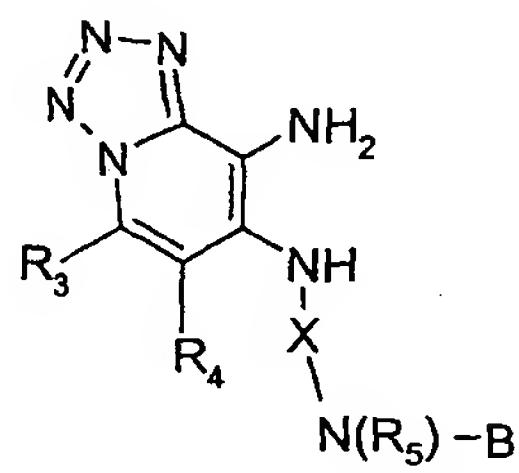


10

IV

wherein B is as defined above;

- (iv) reducing a compound of the Formula IV to provide a compound of Formula V



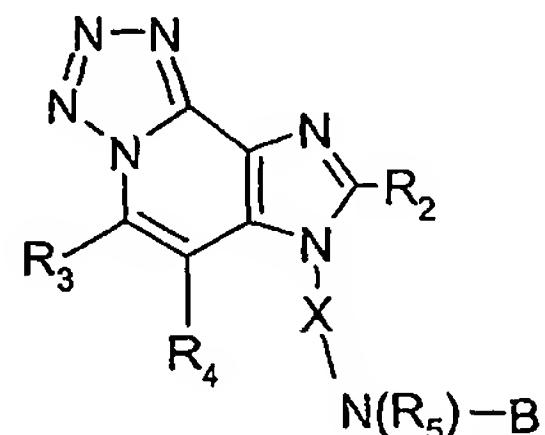
15

V

wherein B is as defined above;

- (v) reacting a compound of Formula V (a) with a carboxylic acid of the formula  $R_2CO_2H$ ; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide,

$R_2C(O\text{-alkyl})_3$ , and  $R_2C(O\text{-alkyl})_2(O(O=)C\text{-alkyl})$ ; or a mixture thereof, or (b) with an imidate of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)- $R_2$ , wherein each alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms; to provide a compound of Formula VII

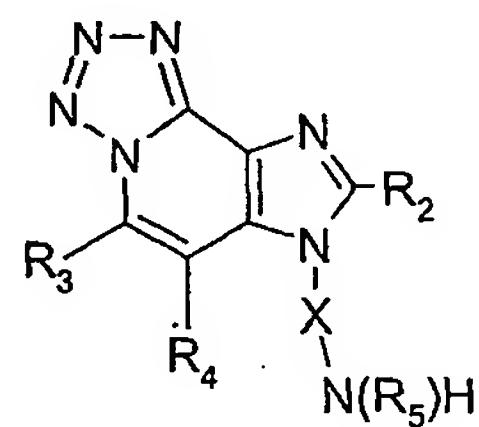


5

VII

wherein B is as defined above; and

(vi) removing the amine protecting group from a compound of the Formula VII to provide a compound of Formula VIII



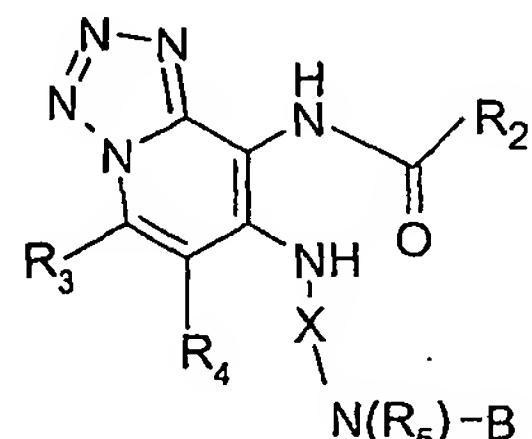
10

VIII.

31. The process of claim 30, wherein in step (iii) the compound of Formula III is reacted with the alkali metal azide in the presence of cerium III chloride.

15

32. The process of claim 30, wherein step (v) includes the steps of  
(v-a) reacting a compound of the Formula V with a carboxylic acid of the formula  $R_2CO_2H$  or the corresponding acyl halide to form a compound of Formula VI

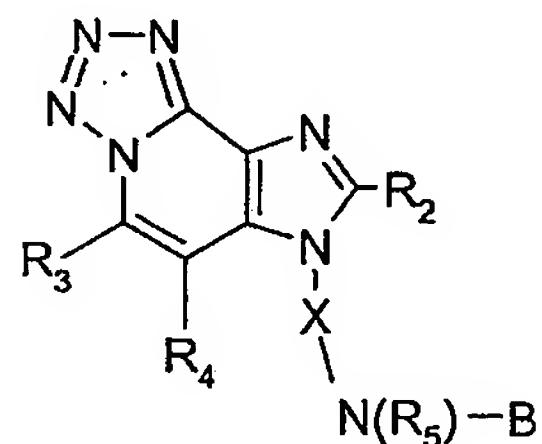


VI

20

wherein B,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , and X are as defined in claim 30; and

(v-b) subjecting the compound of the Formula VI to cyclization conditions, during step (v-a) or subsequent to the completion of step (v-a), to provide a compound of Formula VII



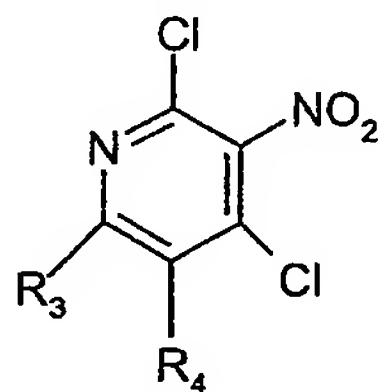
5

VII

wherein B,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , and X are as defined in claim 30.

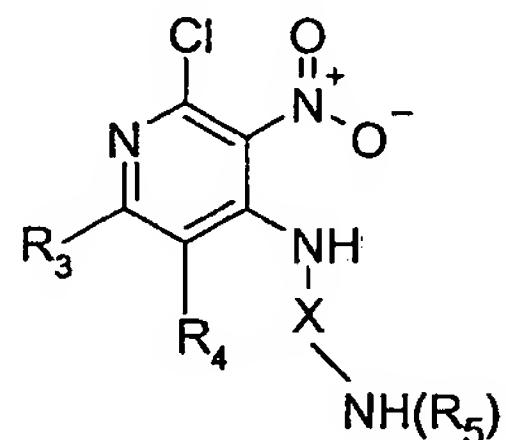
33. The process of claim 25, further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (i), (ii), (iii), (x), (xi), (xii), and (xiii) wherein  $R_1$ ,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , X, Y, and Z are as defined in claim 25:

10 (i) providing a compound of Formula II



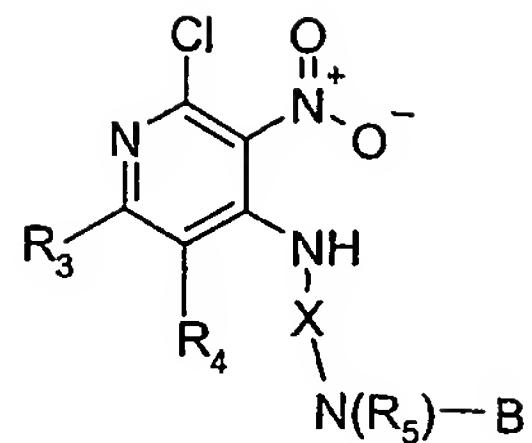
II;

15 (ii) reacting the compound of Formula II (a) with an amine of the formula  $N(R_5)-X-NH_2$  to provide a compound of Formula XIII



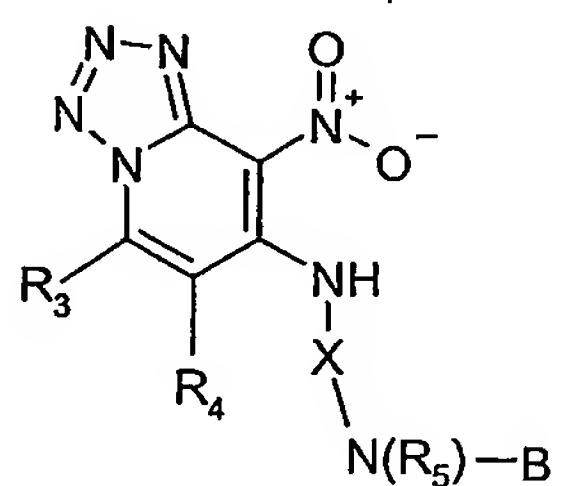
XIII

and protecting the  $-N(R_5)-$  amino group with a protecting group B, or (b) with an amine of the formula  $B-N(R_5)-X-NH_2$ ; wherein B is a protecting group for the  $-N(R_5)-$  amino group; 20 to provide a compound of the Formula III



wherein B is as defined above;

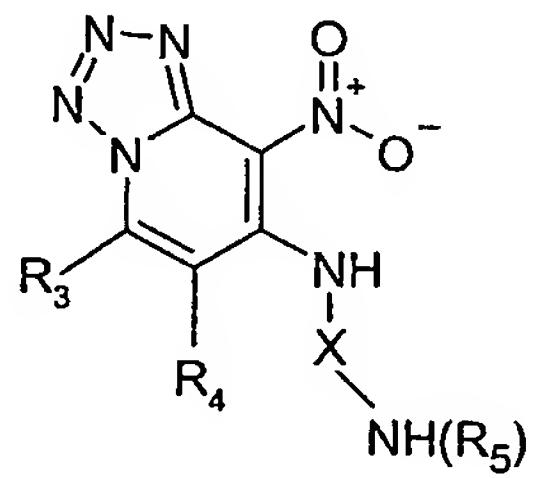
- (iii) reacting a compound of the Formula III with an alkali metal azide to provide  
5 a compound of Formula IV



IV

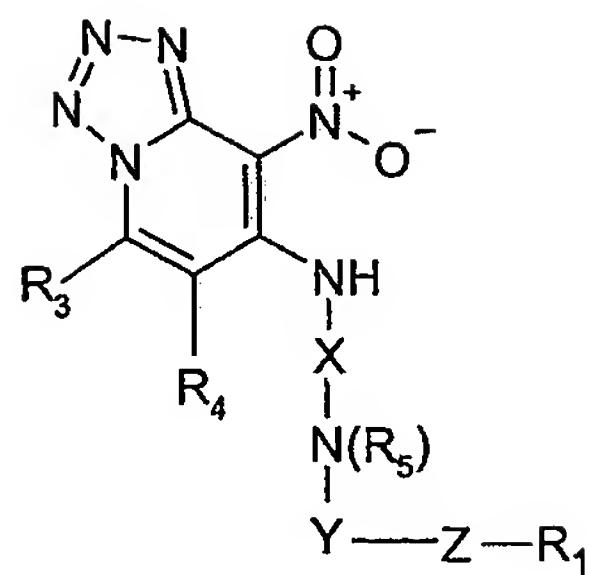
wherein B is as defined above;

- (x) removing the amine protecting group from the compound of Formula IV to  
10 provide a compound of the Formula XIV

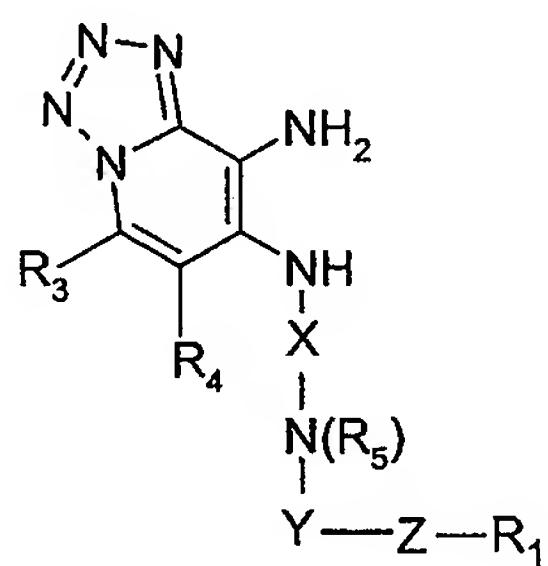


XIV;

- (xi) reacting the compound of Formula XIV with a compound selected from  
R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>,  
15 R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O,  
R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl,  
R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are as defined in claim  
25, to provide a compound of Formula XV



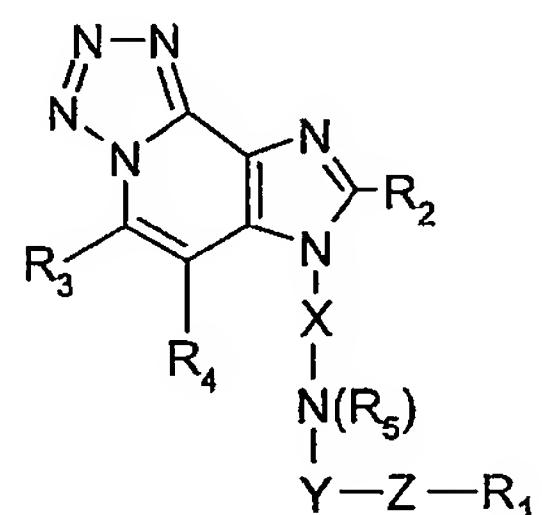
(xii) reducing the compound of Formula XV to provide a compound of the Formula XVI



5

XVI; and

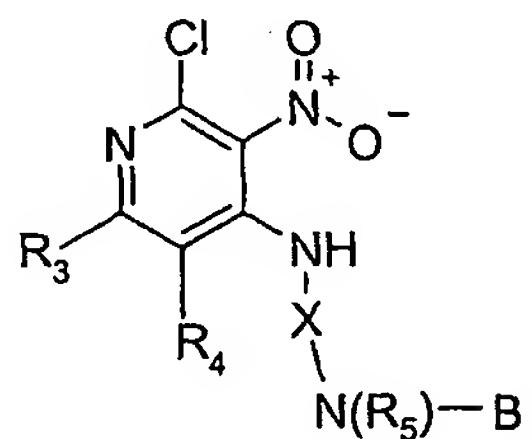
(xiii) reacting a compound of Formula XVI (a) with a carboxylic acid of the formula  $R_2CO_2H$ ; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide,  $R_2C(O\text{-alkyl})_3$ , and  $R_2C(O\text{-alkyl})_2(O(O=)C\text{-alkyl})$ ; or a mixture thereof, or (b) with an imidate of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub>, wherein each alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms; to provide a compound of the Formula XI



XI.

15 34. The process of claim 33, wherein in step (iii) the compound of Formula III is reacted with the alkali metal azide in the presence of cerium III chloride.

35. A process for preparing a chemical compound comprising the steps of:  
providing a compound of Formula III



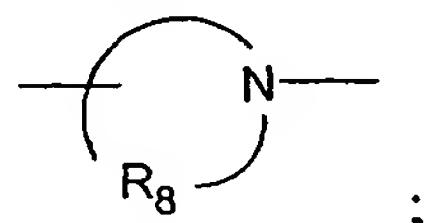
III

5 wherein

X is alkylene or alkenylene;

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino and alkylthio;

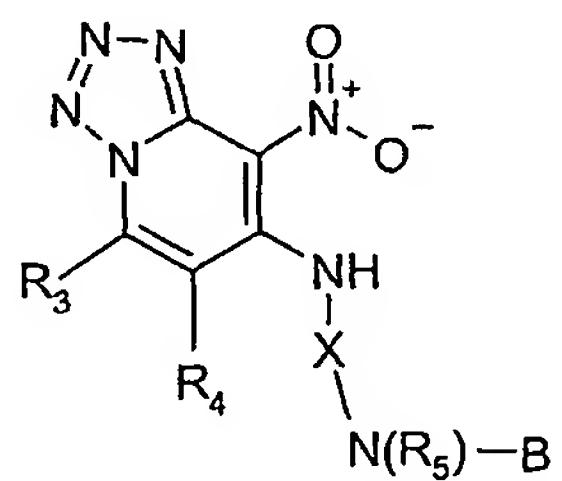
10 R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure



R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene; and

B is a protecting group for the -N(R<sub>5</sub>)- amino group; and

reacting the compound of the Formula III with an alkali metal azide to provide a  
15 compound of Formula IV



IV

wherein B, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above.

20 36. The process of claim 35, further comprising the step of isolating the compound of  
Formula IV.

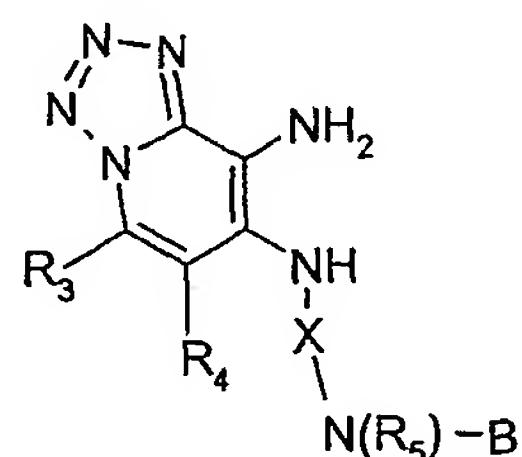
37. The process of claim 35, wherein R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, X, and B are independently selected as follows:

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen and methyl;  
 X is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkenylene; and  
 5 B is selected from *t*-butoxycarbonyl, *iso*-butoxycarbonyl, benzyloxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, methoxycarbonyl, benzoyl, pivaloyl, propionyl, acetyl, and phthalimide.

38. The process of claim 37, wherein  
 R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are methyl or R<sub>3</sub> is methyl and R<sub>4</sub> is hydrogen;  
 10 X is selected from ethylene, propylene, and butylene; and  
 B is *t*-butoxycarbonyl.

39. The process of claim 35, wherein the compound of Formula III is reacted with the alkali metal azide in the presence of cerium III chloride.

15 40. The process of claim 35, further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (iv), (v), (vi), (vii-1), and (viii-a):  
 (iv) reducing a compound of the Formula IV to provide a compound of the  
 Formula V



20 wherein B, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 35;  
 (v) reacting a compound of Formula V (a) with a carboxylic acid of the formula R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide, R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>3</sub>, and R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>(O(O=)C-alkyl); or a mixture thereof, or (b) with an imidate of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub>, wherein each alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms; R<sub>2</sub> is selected from:

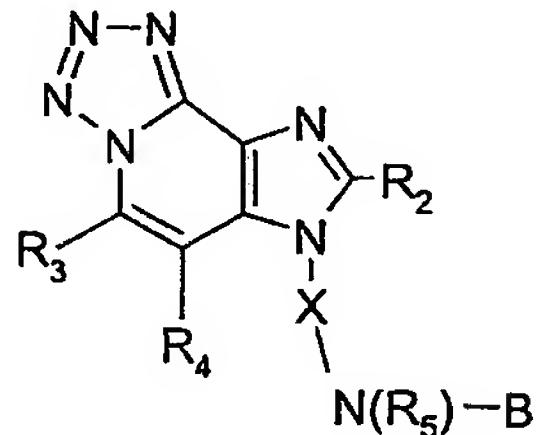
-hydrogen;

-alkyl;  
-alkenyl;  
-aryl;  
-substituted aryl;  
5 -heteroaryl;  
-substituted heteroaryl;  
-alkylene-O-alkyl;  
-alkylene-S-alkyl;  
-alkylene-O-aryl;  
-alkylene-S-aryl;  
10 -alkylene-O-alkenyl;  
-alkylene-S- alkenyl; and  
-alkyl or alkenyl substituted by one or more substituents selected  
from:  
15 -OH;  
-halogen;  
-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
20 -SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-NR<sub>6</sub>- SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
25 -CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-N<sub>3</sub>;  
-aryl;  
-substituted aryl;  
-heteroaryl;  
30 -substituted heteroaryl;  
-heterocyclyl;  
-substituted heterocyclyl;

-CO-aryl;  
 -CO-(substituted aryl);  
 -CO-heteroaryl; and  
 -CO-(substituted heteroaryl); and

5 each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

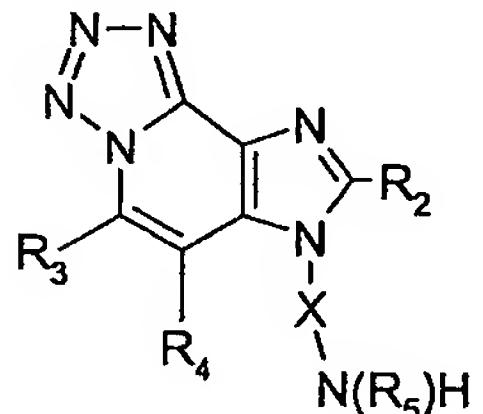
to provide a compound of Formula VII



VII

wherein B, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 35; and R<sub>2</sub> is as defined above;

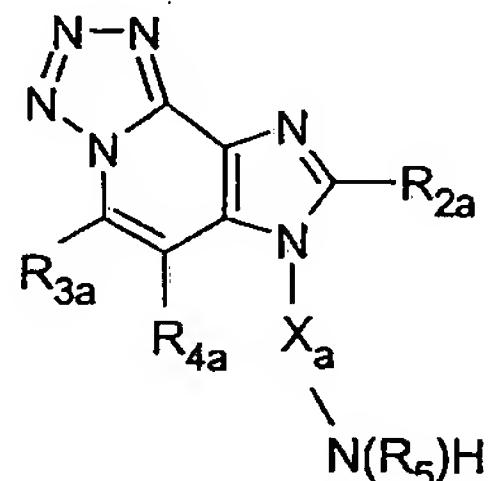
10 (vi) removing the amine protecting group from a compound of the Formula VII  
 to provide a compound of the Formula VIII



VIII

wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above in step (v);

15 (vii-1) providing a compound of the Formula VIIIa



VIIIa

wherein

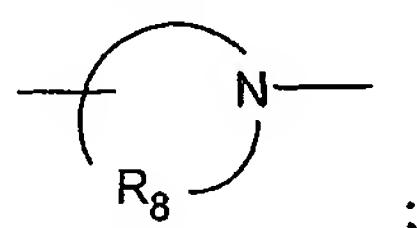
X<sub>a</sub> is alkylene;

20 R<sub>2a</sub> is selected from:

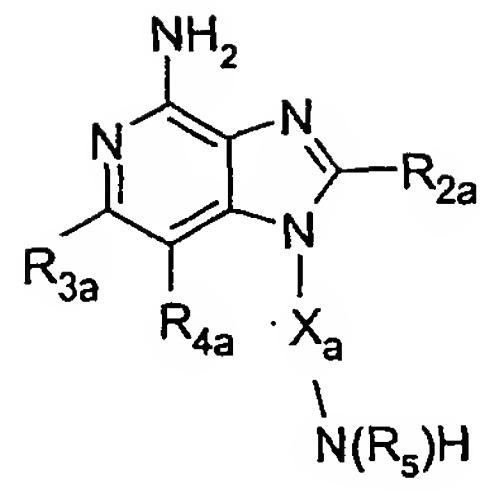
-hydrogen,  
-alkyl,  
-alkylene-O-alkyl,  
-alkylene-S-alkyl, and  
5 -alkyl substituted by one or more substituents selected from:  
-OH,  
-halogen,  
-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,  
-CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,  
10 -CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,  
-SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,  
-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,  
-NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,  
-NR<sub>6</sub>-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,  
15 -CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,  
-CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,  
-N<sub>3</sub>,  
-heterocyclyl, and  
-substituted heterocyclyl; and

20 R<sub>3a</sub> and R<sub>4a</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, and alkylthio;

R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X<sub>a</sub> to form a ring having the structure



25 each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl; and  
R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene;  
reductively removing the tetrazolo ring from a compound of the Formula VIIia to provide a compound of Formula Xa



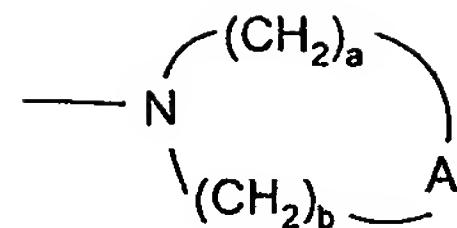
wherein R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X<sub>a</sub> are as defined above; and

(viii-a) reacting a compound of the Formula Xa with a compound selected from  
R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-  
5 N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S,  
R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl;  
wherein:

10 R<sub>1</sub> is aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, alkyl or alkenyl, each of which may be  
unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:

- alkyl;
- alkenyl;
- aryl;
- heteroaryl;
- heterocyclyl;
- substituted cycloalkyl;
- substituted aryl;
- substituted heteroaryl;
- substituted heterocyclyl;
- O-alkyl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;
- COOH;
- CO-O-alkyl;

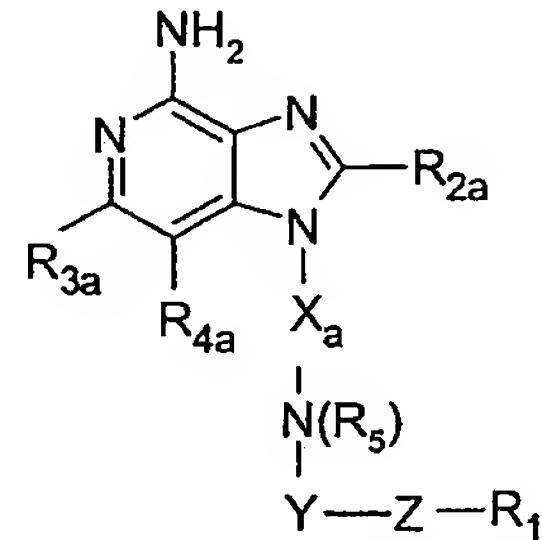
-CO-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;  
5 -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
10 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-aryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted aryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-heteroaryl;  
15 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted heteroaryl;  
-P(O)(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>;  
-N<sub>3</sub>;  
-halogen;  
-haloalkyl;  
20 -haloalkoxy;  
-CO-haloalkyl;  
-CO-haloalkoxy;  
-NO<sub>2</sub>;  
-CN;  
25 -OH;  
-SH; and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;  
each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
R<sub>7</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or  
when R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or  
30 more heteroatoms, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 6 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7; and

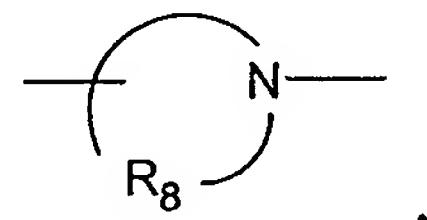
5 R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene;

to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compound of Formula Ia

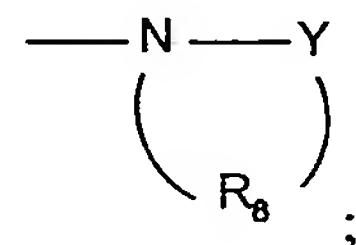


Ia

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof; wherein R<sub>1</sub> is as defined above, R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, and X<sub>a</sub> are as defined in step (vii-1) above, R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure



or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, and Z is a bond, then R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



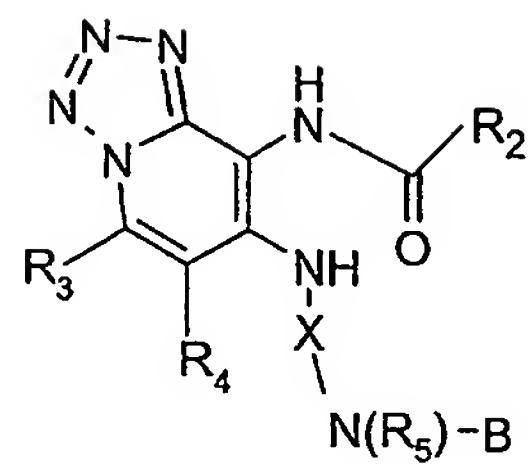
15

Y is -CO-, -CS-, or -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and Z is a bond, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-CO-, or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-SO<sub>2</sub>-; with the proviso that when Y is -SO<sub>2</sub>- then Z is a bond or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-.

41. The process of claim 40, wherein step (v) includes the steps of

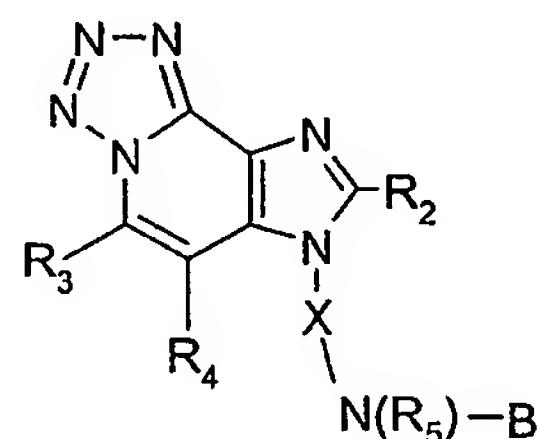
20

(v-a) reacting a compound of the Formula V with a carboxylic acid of the formula R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H or the corresponding acyl halide to form a compound of Formula VI



wherein B, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in step (v) of claim 40; and

(v-b) subjecting the compound of the Formula VI to cyclization conditions, during  
5 step (v-a) or subsequent to the completion of step (v-a), to provide a compound of  
Formula VII



wherein B, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in step (v) of claim 40.

10

42. The process of claim 40, wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, X<sub>a</sub>, Y and Z are independently selected as follows:

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> branched alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, and substituted cycloalkyl, or when R<sub>1</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure  
15

-N(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>a</sub>-A-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>b</sub>-

wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 4 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7;

20 R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>2a</sub> are selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene-O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>4a</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen and methyl;

R<sub>5</sub> is selected from hydrogen and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

X is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkenylene;

X<sub>a</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene;  
Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and  
Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which  
may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or R<sub>7</sub> is joined with R<sub>1</sub> as described  
5 above.

## 43. The process of claim 42, wherein

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from methyl, phenyl, and cyclohexyl, or R<sub>1</sub> along with the nitrogen  
atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>7</sub> to form a morpholino ring;

10 R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>2a</sub> are selected from hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl,  
*sec*-butyl, isobutyl, *tert*-butyl, 2-methoxyethyl, ethoxymethyl, and cyclopropylmethyl;

R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>4a</sub> are methyl or R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>3a</sub> are methyl and R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>4a</sub> are  
hydrogen;

R<sub>5</sub> is hydrogen;

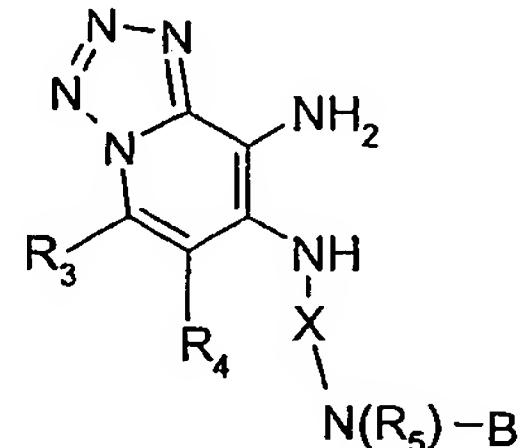
15 X and X<sub>a</sub> are selected from ethylene, propylene, and butylene;

Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and

Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen or R<sub>7</sub> along with the  
nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>1</sub> to form a morpholino ring.

20 44. The process of claim 35, further comprising one or more steps selected from steps  
(iv), (v), (vi), (vii-a), (vii-b), and (viii-b):

(iv) reducing a compound of the Formula IV to provide a compound of  
Formula V



25

V

wherein B, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 35;

(v) reacting a compound of Formula V (a) with a carboxylic acid of the formula  
R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide,

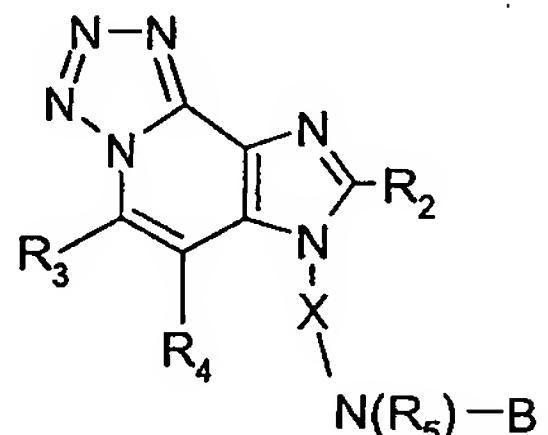
$R_2C(O\text{-alkyl})_3$ , and  $R_2C(O\text{-alkyl})_2(O(O=)C\text{-alkyl})$ ; or a mixture thereof, or (b) with an imidate of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub>, wherein each alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms; R<sub>2</sub> is selected from:

- hydrogen;
- 5 -alkyl;
- alkenyl;
- aryl;
- substituted aryl;
- heteroaryl;
- 10 -substituted heteroaryl;
- alkylene-O-alkyl;
- alkylene-S-alkyl;
- alkylene-O-aryl;
- alkylene-S-aryl;
- 15 -alkylene-O-alkenyl;
- alkylene-S- alkenyl; and
- alkyl or alkenyl substituted by one or more substituents selected  
from:
  - OH;
  - 20 -halogen;
  - N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - 25 -NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - NR<sub>6</sub>- SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - 30 -N<sub>3</sub>;
  - aryl;
  - substituted aryl;

-heteroaryl;  
 -substituted heteroaryl;  
 -heterocyclyl;  
 -substituted heterocyclyl;  
 5 -CO-aryl;  
 -CO-(substituted aryl);  
 -CO-heteroaryl; and  
 -CO-(substituted heteroaryl); and

each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

10 to provide a compound of Formula VII

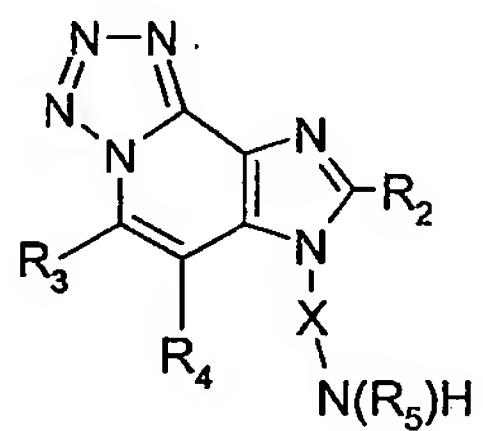


VII

wherein B, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 35; and R<sub>2</sub> is as defined above;

(vi) removing the amine protecting group from a compound of the Formula VII

15 to provide a compound of Formula VIII

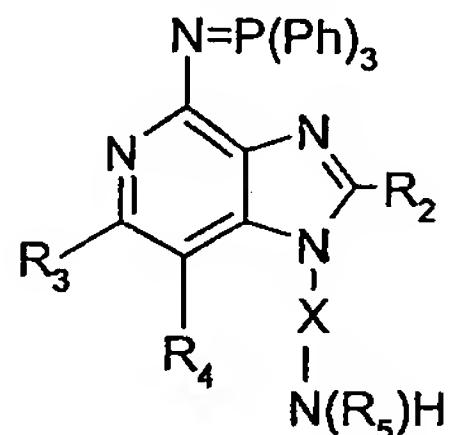


VIII

wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above in step (v);

(vii-a) reacting a compound of the Formula VIII with triphenylphosphine to

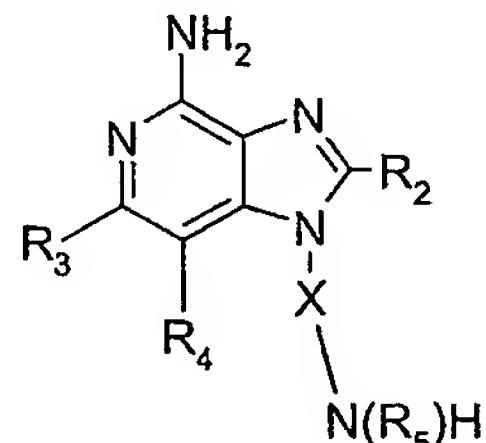
20 provide an N-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula IX



## IX

wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above in step (v);

(vii-b) hydrolyzing an N-triphenylphosphinyl compound of the Formula IX to provide a compound of Formula X



5

## X

wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above in step (v); and

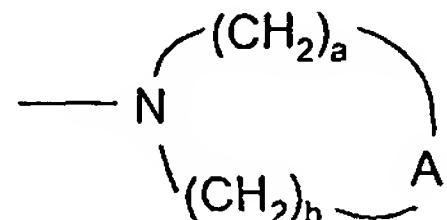
(viii-b) reacting a compound of the Formula X with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl; wherein:

R<sub>1</sub> is aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, alkyl or alkenyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:

- 15      -alkyl;
- alkenyl;
- aryl;
- heteroaryl;
- heterocyclyl;
- 20      -substituted cycloalkyl;
- substituted aryl;
- substituted heteroaryl;
- substituted heterocyclyl;
- O-alkyl;
- 25      -O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;

-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-COOH;  
-CO-O-alkyl;  
5 -CO-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
10 -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
- (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;  
15 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-aryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted aryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-heteroaryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted heteroaryl;  
20 -P(O)(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>;  
-N<sub>3</sub>;  
-halogen;  
-haloalkyl;  
-haloalkoxy;  
25 -CO-haloalkyl;  
-CO-haloalkoxy;  
-NO<sub>2</sub>;  
-CN;  
-OH;  
30 -SH; and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;  
each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

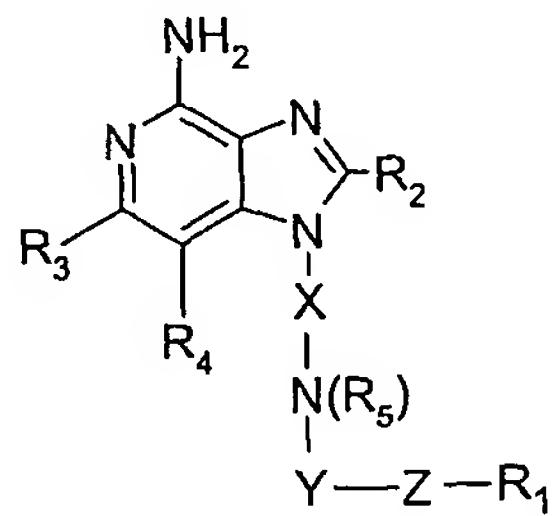
$R_7$  is H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or when  $R_1$  is alkyl,  $Z$  is  $-N(R_7)-$ , and  $R_7$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms,  $R_7$  and  $R_1$  can join to form a ring having the structure



5 wherein  $A$  is selected from  $-O-$ ,  $-S(O)_{0-2}-$ ,  $-N(R_6)-$ , and  $-CH_2-$ ; and  $a$  and  $b$  are independently integers from 1 to 6 with the proviso that  $a + b$  is less than or equal to 7; and

$R_8$  is  $C_{3-8}$  alkylene;

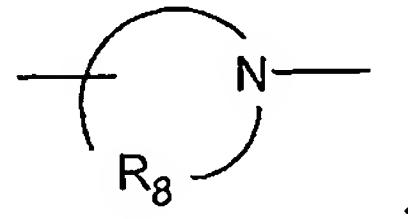
to provide a  $1H$ -imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compound of Formula I



10

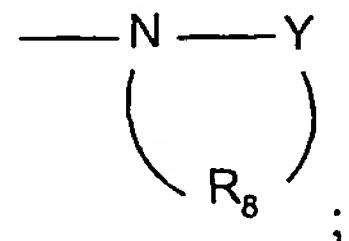
I

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof; wherein  $R_1$ ,  $R_7$ , and  $R_8$  are as defined above,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ , and  $X$  are as defined in step (v) above,  $R_5$  is H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl, or when  $R_5$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl, then  $R_5$  can join with a carbon atom of  $X$  to form a ring having the structure



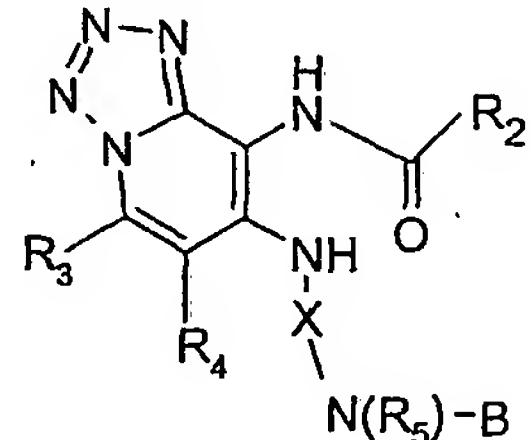
15

or when  $R_5$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl,  $R_1$  is alkyl, and  $Z$  is a bond, then  $R_5$  and  $R_1$  can join to form a ring having the structure



20  $Y$  is  $-CO-$ ,  $-CS-$ , or  $-SO_2-$ ; and  $Z$  is a bond,  $-N(R_7)-$ ,  $-N(R_7)-CO-$ , or  $-N(R_7)-SO_2-$ ; with the proviso that when  $Y$  is  $-SO_2-$  then  $Z$  is a bond or  $-N(R_7)-$ .

45. The process of claim 44, wherein step (v) includes the steps of  
 (v-a) reacting a compound of the Formula V with a carboxylic acid of the formula  $R_2CO_2H$  or the corresponding acyl halide to form a compound of the Formula VI

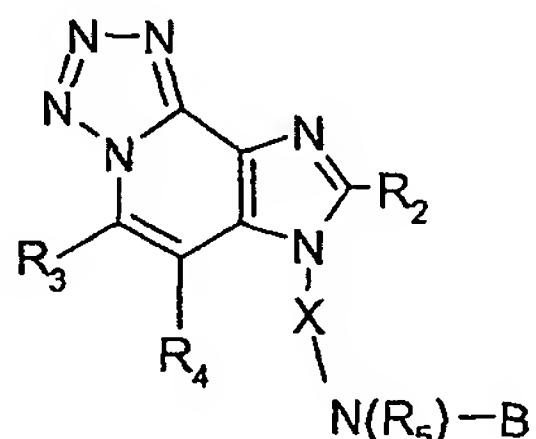


5

VI

wherein B,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , and X are as defined in step (v) of claim 44; and

- (v-b) subjecting the compound of the Formula VI to cyclization conditions, during step (v-a) or subsequent to the completion of step (v-a), to provide a compound of Formula VII



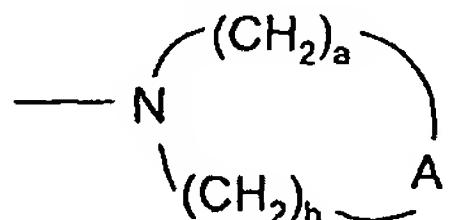
10

VII

wherein B,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , and X are as defined in step (v) of claim 44.

46. The process of claim 44, wherein  $R_1$ ,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , X, Y and Z are independently selected as follows:

$R_1$  is selected from  $C_{1-4}$  branched alkyl,  $C_{1-4}$  straight chain alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, and substituted cycloalkyl, or when  $R_1$  is  $C_{1-4}$  straight chain alkyl, Z is  $-N(R_7)-$ , and  $R_7$  is  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms,  $R_1$  and  $R_7$  can join to form a ring having the structure



20

wherein A is selected from  $-O-$ ,  $-S(O)_{0-2}-$ ,  $-N(R_6)-$ , and  $-CH_2-$ ; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 4 with the proviso that  $a + b$  is less than or equal to 7;

$R_2$  is selected from hydrogen,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl and  $C_{1-4}$  alkylene-O- $C_{1-4}$  alkyl;

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen and methyl;  
R<sub>5</sub> is selected from hydrogen and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;  
X is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkenylene;  
Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and  
5 Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or R<sub>7</sub> is joined with R<sub>1</sub> as described above.

## 47. The process of claim 46, wherein

10 R<sub>1</sub> is selected from methyl, phenyl, and cyclohexyl, or R<sub>1</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>7</sub> to form a morpholino ring;

R<sub>2</sub> is selected from hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, *sec*-butyl, isobutyl, *tert*-butyl, 2-methoxyethyl, ethoxymethyl, and cyclopropylmethyl;

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are methyl or R<sub>3</sub> is methyl and R<sub>4</sub> is hydrogen;

15 R<sub>5</sub> is hydrogen;

X is selected from ethylene, propylene, and butylene;

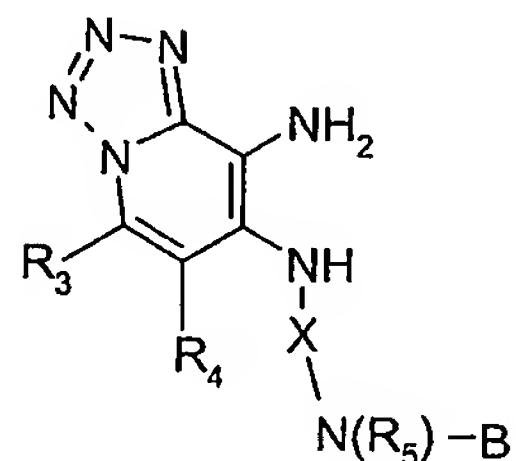
Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and

Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen or R<sub>7</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>1</sub> to form a morpholino ring.

20

## 48. The process of claim 35, further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (iv), (v), (vi), (viii-c), and (vii-2):

(iv) reducing a compound of the Formula IV to provide a compound of Formula V



25

wherein B, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 35;

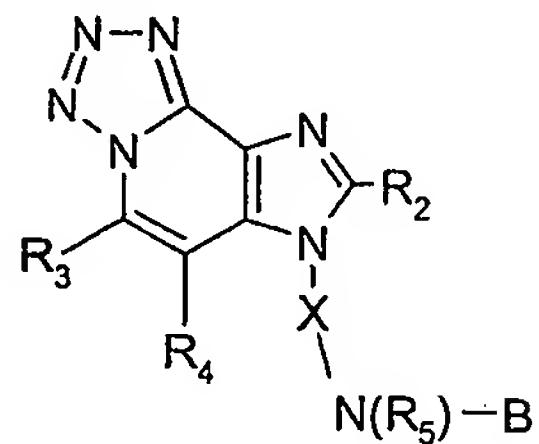
(v) reacting a compound of Formula V (a) with a carboxylic acid of the formula R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide, R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>3</sub>, and R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>(O(O=)C-alkyl); or a mixture thereof, or (b) with an imidate of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub>, wherein each alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms; R<sub>2</sub> is selected from:

- hydrogen;
- alkyl;
- alkenyl;
- aryl;
- substituted aryl;
- heteroaryl;
- substituted heteroaryl;
- alkylene-O-alkyl;
- alkylene-S-alkyl;
- alkylene-O-aryl;
- alkylene-S-aryl;
- alkylene-O-alkenyl;
- alkylene-S- alkenyl; and
- alkyl or alkenyl substituted by one or more substituents selected from:
  - OH;
  - halogen;
  - N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - NR<sub>6</sub>-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - N<sub>3</sub>;

-aryl;  
 -substituted aryl;  
 -heteroaryl;  
 -substituted heteroaryl;  
 5 -heterocycl;  
 -substituted heterocycl;  
 -CO-aryl;  
 -CO-(substituted aryl);  
 -CO-heteroaryl; and  
 10 -CO-(substituted heteroaryl), and

each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

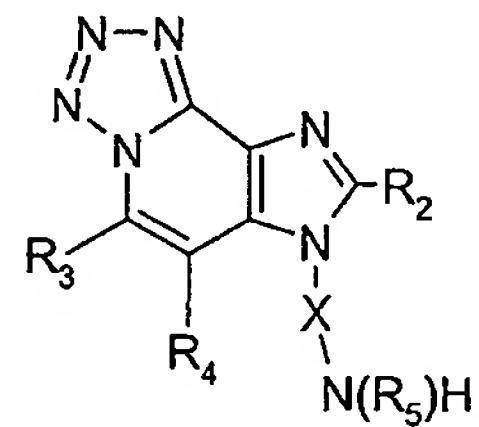
to provide a compound of Formula VII



VII

15 wherein B, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 35; and R<sub>2</sub> is as defined above.

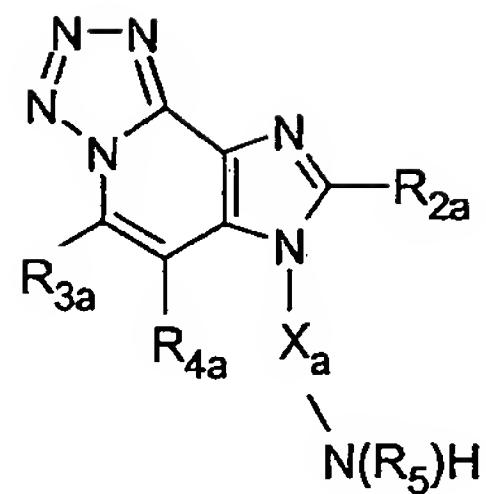
(vi) removing the amine protecting group from a compound of the Formula VII  
 to provide a compound of the Formula VIII



VIII

20 wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above in step (v);

(viii-c) providing a compound of the Formula VIIIa



wherein

X<sub>a</sub> is alkylene;

5      R<sub>2a</sub> is selected from:

- hydrogen,
- alkyl,
- alkylene-O-alkyl,
- alkylene-S-alkyl, and

10     -alkyl substituted by one or more substituents selected from:

- OH,
- halogen,
- N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,
- CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,

15     -CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,

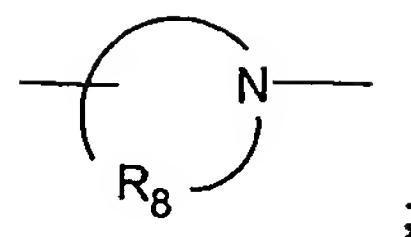
- SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,
- NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,
- NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,
- NR<sub>6</sub>-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,

20     -CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,

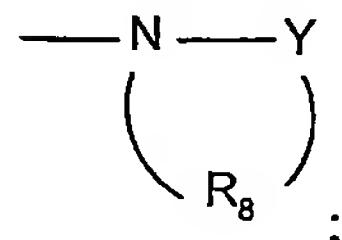
- CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl,
- N<sub>3</sub>,
- heterocyclyl, and
- substituted heterocyclyl; and

25     R<sub>3a</sub> and R<sub>4a</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, and alkylthio;

R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X<sub>a</sub> to form a ring having the structure



or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, and Z is a bond, then R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



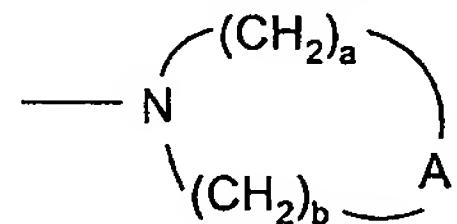
- 5        each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl; and  
       R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene;  
       reacting a compound of the Formula VIIIa with a compound selected from  
       R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1a</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>1a</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-  
       C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>1a</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1a</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1a</sub>-N=C=S,  
 10      R<sub>1a</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1a</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1a</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, R<sub>1a</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1a</sub>,  
       and R<sub>1a</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl;

wherein:

R<sub>1a</sub> is alkyl or heterocyclyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:

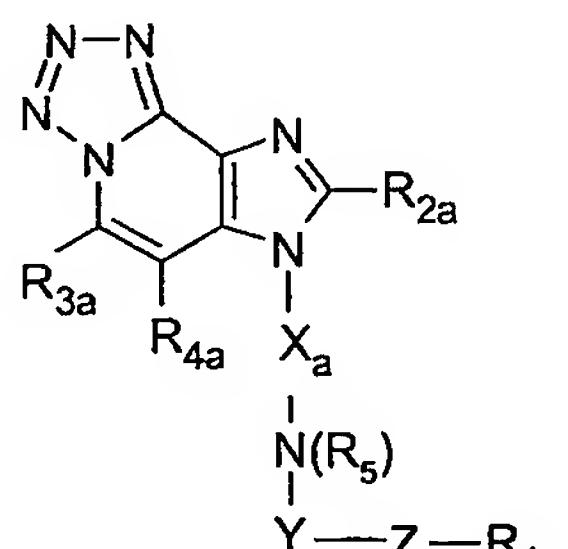
- 15      -alkyl;  
           -heterocyclyl;  
           -substituted cycloalkyl;  
           -substituted heterocyclyl;  
           -O-alkyl;  
 20      -O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
           -O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
           -COOH;  
           -CO-O-alkyl;  
           -CO-alkyl;  
 25      -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;  
           -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
           -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
           -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
           -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;

-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-alkyl;  
 -P(O)(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>;  
 -N<sub>3</sub>;  
 -halogen;  
 5 -haloalkyl;  
 -haloalkoxy;  
 -CO-haloalkyl;  
 -CO-haloalkoxy;  
 -NO<sub>2</sub>;  
 10 -CN;  
 -OH;  
 -SH; and in the case of alkyl and heterocyclyl, oxo;  
 each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
 R<sub>7</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or  
 15 when R<sub>1a</sub> is alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or  
 more heteroatoms, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>1a</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are  
 independently integers from 1 to 6 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7;  
 20 and

R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene;  
 to provide a compound of Formula XIa



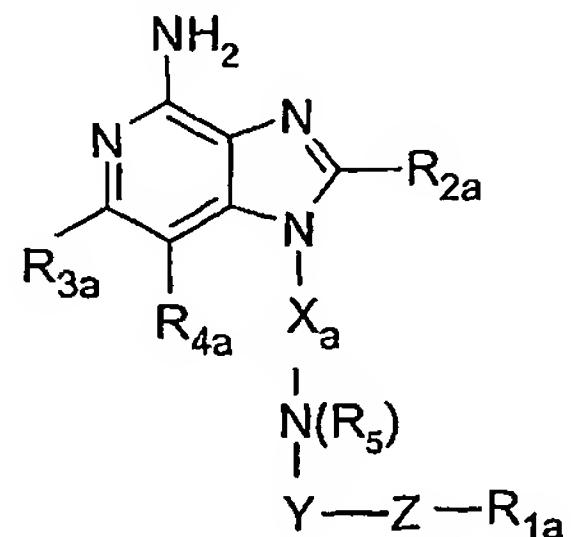
XIa

25 wherein

$X_a$  is alkylene;  
 $Y$  is -CO-, -CS-, or -SO<sub>2</sub>-;  
 $Z$  is a bond, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-CO-, or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-SO<sub>2</sub>-; with the proviso that when  $Y$  is -SO<sub>2</sub>- then  $Z$  is a bond or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-; and

5      R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, and R<sub>5</sub> are as defined above;

(vii-2) reductively removing the tetrazolo ring from the compound of Formula XIa to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compound of Formula Ib

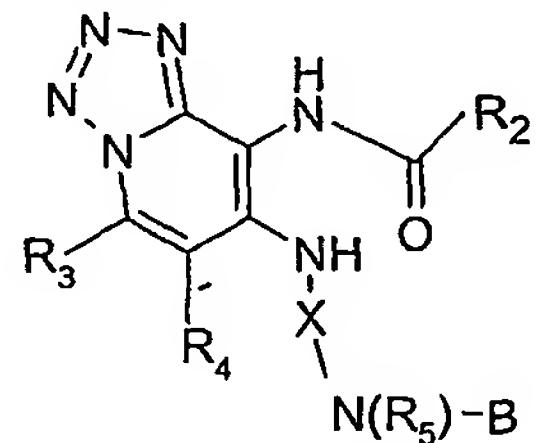


Ib

10     or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof wherein R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X<sub>a</sub>, Y, and Z are as defined in Formula XIa.

49.    The process of claim 48, wherein step (v) includes the steps of

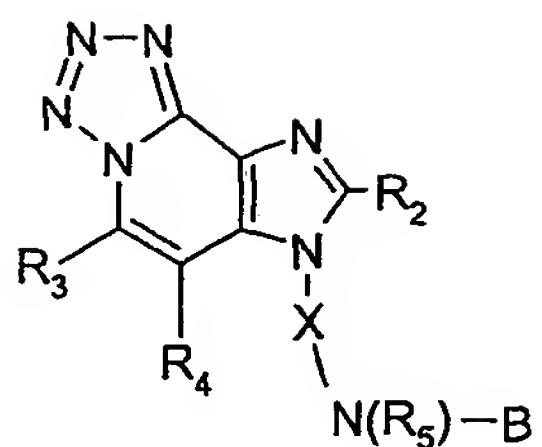
15    (v-a) reacting a compound of the Formula V with a carboxylic acid of the formula R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H or the corresponding acyl halide to form a compound of Formula VI



VI

wherein B, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in step (v) of claim 48; and

20    (v-b) subjecting the compound of the Formula VI to cyclization conditions, during step (v-a) or subsequent to the completion of step (v-a), to provide a compound of Formula VII

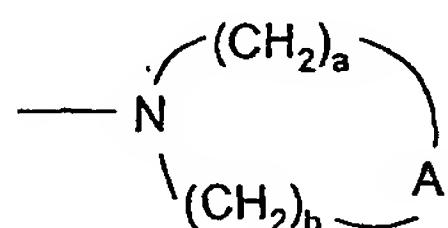


## VII

wherein B, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in step (v) claim 48.

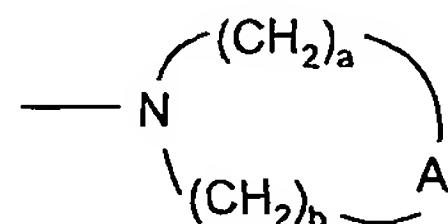
- 5 50. The process of claim 48, wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, R<sub>1a</sub>, R<sub>2a</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4a</sub>, X<sub>a</sub>, Y  
and Z are independently selected as follows:

10 R<sub>1</sub> is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> branched alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, aryl, substituted  
aryl, cycloalkyl, and substituted cycloalkyl, or when R<sub>1</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, Z is  
-N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, R<sub>1</sub> and  
R<sub>7</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are  
independently integers from 1 to 4 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7;

15 R<sub>1a</sub> is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> branched alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, cycloalkyl, and  
substituted cycloalkyl, or when R<sub>1a</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub>  
alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, R<sub>1a</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> can join to form a  
ring having the structure



20 wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are  
independently integers from 1 to 4 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7;

R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>2a</sub> are selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene-O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;  
R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>4a</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen and methyl;  
R<sub>5</sub> is selected from hydrogen and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;  
X is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkenylene;  
25 X is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene;

Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and

Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or R<sub>7</sub> is joined with R<sub>1</sub> or R<sub>1a</sub> as described above.

5

51. The process of claim 50, wherein

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from methyl, phenyl, and cyclohexyl, or R<sub>1</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>7</sub> to form a morpholino ring;

10 R<sub>1a</sub> is selected from methyl, and cyclohexyl, or R<sub>1a</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>7</sub> to form a morpholino ring;

R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>2a</sub> are selected from hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, sec-butyl, isobutyl, tert-butyl, 2-methoxyethyl, ethoxymethyl, and cyclopropylmethyl;

R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>3a</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and R<sub>4a</sub> are methyl or R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>3a</sub> are methyl and R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>4a</sub> are hydrogen;

15 R<sub>5</sub> is hydrogen;

X and X<sub>a</sub> are selected from ethylene, propylene, and butylene;

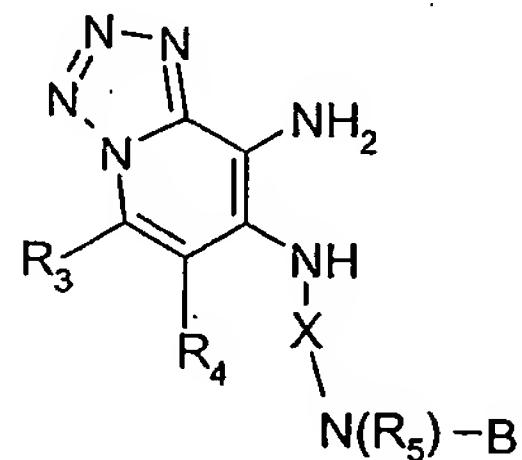
Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and

Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen or R<sub>7</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>1</sub> or R<sub>1a</sub> to form a morpholino ring.

20

52. The process of claim 35, further comprising one or more steps selected from steps (iv), (v), (vi), (viii-d), (vii-a-1), and (vii-b-1):

(iv) reducing a compound of the Formula IV to provide a compound of the Formula V



25

V

wherein B, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 35;

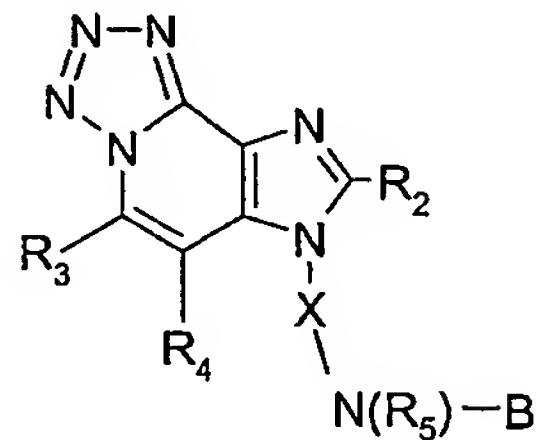
(v) reacting a compound of Formula V (a) with a carboxylic acid of the formula R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H; an equivalent thereof selected from the corresponding acyl halide, R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>3</sub>, and R<sub>2</sub>C(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>(O(O=)C-alkyl); or a mixture thereof, or (b) with an imidate of the formula alkyl-O-C(=N)-R<sub>2</sub>, wherein each alkyl contains 1 to 8 carbon atoms; R<sub>2</sub> is selected from:

- hydrogen;
- alkyl;
- alkenyl;
- aryl;
- substituted aryl;
- heteroaryl;
- substituted heteroaryl;
- alkylene-O-alkyl;
- alkylene-S-alkyl;
- alkylene-O-aryl;
- alkylene-S-aryl;
- alkylene-O-alkenyl;
- alkylene-S- alkenyl; and
- alkyl or alkenyl substituted by one or more substituents selected from:
  - OH;
  - halogen;
  - N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
  - NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - NR<sub>6</sub>- SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
  - N<sub>3</sub>;

-aryl;  
 -substituted aryl;  
 -heteroaryl;  
 -substituted heteroaryl;  
 5           -heterocyclyl;  
 -substituted heterocyclyl;  
 -CO-aryl;  
 -CO-(substituted aryl);  
 -CO-heteroaryl; and  
 10           -CO-(substituted heteroaryl), and

each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

to provide a compound of Formula VII

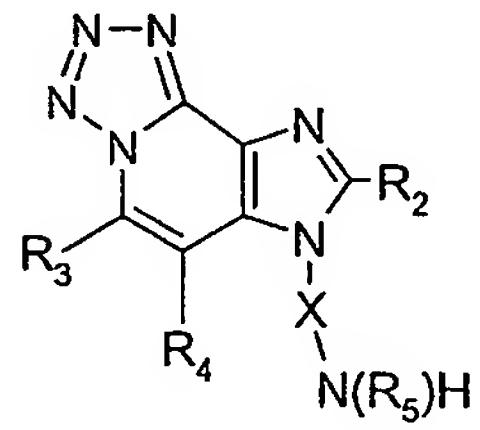


VII

15       wherein B, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 35; and R<sub>2</sub> is as defined above;

(vi)      removing the amine protecting group from a compound of the Formula VII

to provide a compound of Formula VIII



VIII

20       wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined above in step (v);

(viii-d)   reacting a compound of the Formula VIII with a compound selected from R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-C(O)Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)OC(O)-R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-C(O)OC(O)-N(R<sub>7</sub>)R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=O, R<sub>1</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-C(O)-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-N=C=S, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, Cl-R<sub>8</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl, R<sub>1</sub>-S(O)<sub>2</sub>OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-R<sub>1</sub>, and R<sub>1</sub>(R<sub>7</sub>)N-S(O)<sub>2</sub>Cl;

25       wherein:

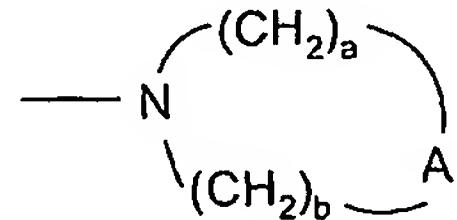
R<sub>1</sub> is aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, alkyl or alkenyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:

- alkyl;
- alkenyl;
- 5 -aryl;
- heteroaryl;
- heterocyclyl;
- substituted cycloalkyl;
- substituted aryl;
- 10 -substituted heteroaryl;
- substituted heterocyclyl;
- O-alkyl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;
- 15 -O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;
- O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;
- COOH;
- 20 -CO-O-alkyl;
- CO-alkyl;
- S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;
- S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;
- S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;
- 25 -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;
- S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;
- S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;
- S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;
- $(\text{alkylene})_{0-1}\text{-N}(\text{R}_6)_2$ ;
- 30 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;
- (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-alkyl;
- (alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-aryl;

-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted aryl;  
 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-heteroaryl;  
 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted heteroaryl;  
 -P(O)(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>;  
 5 -N<sub>3</sub>;  
 -halogen;  
 -haloalkyl;  
 -haloalkoxy;  
 -CO-haloalkyl;  
 10 -CO-haloalkoxy;  
 -NO<sub>2</sub>;  
 -CN;  
 -OH;  
 -SH; and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

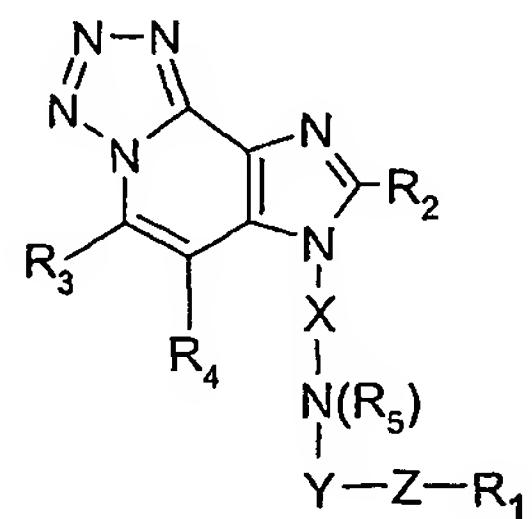
15 each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

R<sub>7</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or when R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



20 wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 6 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7; and

R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene;  
 to provide a compound of Formula XI

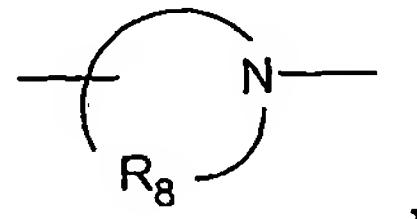


25

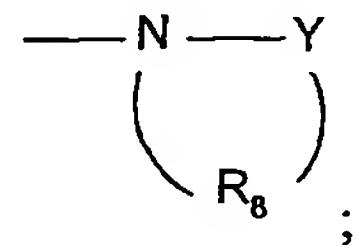
XI

wherein R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, and X are as defined in step (v);  
 Y is -CO-, -CS-, or -SO<sub>2</sub>-;  
 Z is a bond, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-CO-, or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-SO<sub>2</sub>-; with the proviso that when Y is -SO<sub>2</sub>- then Z is a bond or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-;

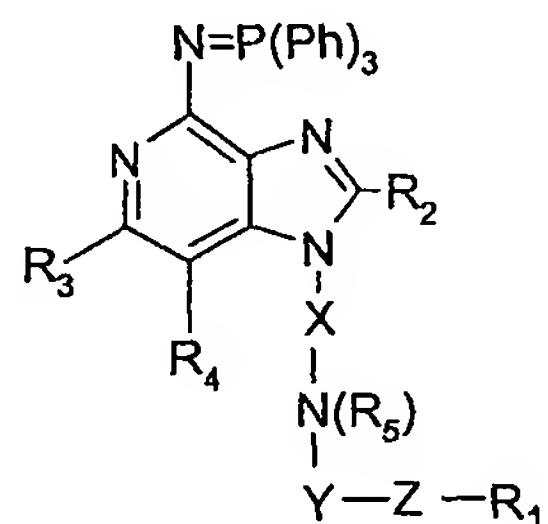
- 5           R<sub>1</sub> is as defined above;  
 R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure



- 10          or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, and Z is a bond, then R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure

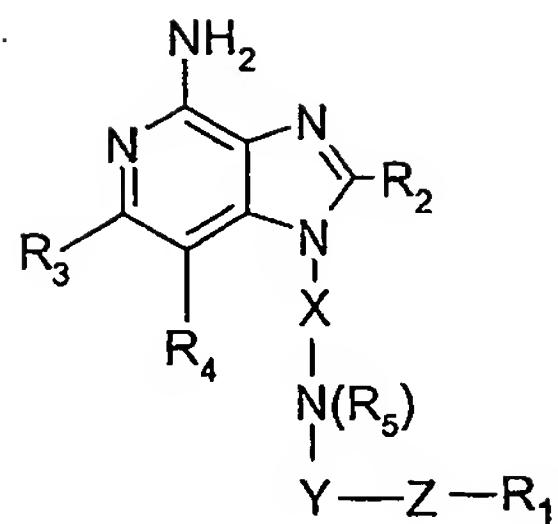


- and  
 R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene;  
 (vii-a-1) reacting a compound of the Formula XI with triphenylphosphine to provide an N-triphenylphosphinyl compound of Formula XII



XII

- wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y, and Z are as defined in step (viii-d) above; and  
 20          (vii-b-1) hydrolyzing an N-triphenylphosphinyl compound of the Formula XII to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine compound of Formula I

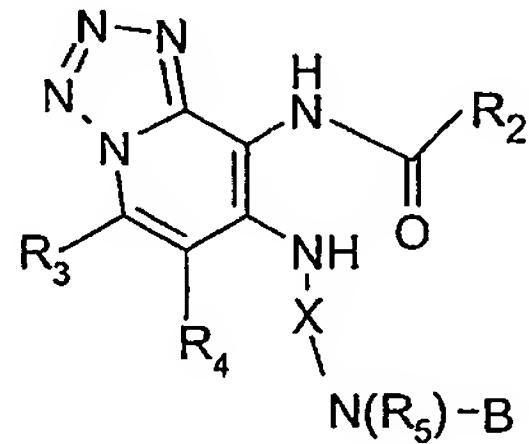


I

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof; wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y, and Z are as defined in the Formula XII.

5

53. The process of claim 52, wherein step (v) includes the steps of  
 (v-a) reacting a compound of the Formula V with a carboxylic acid of the formula R<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H or the corresponding acyl halide to form a compound of the Formula VI

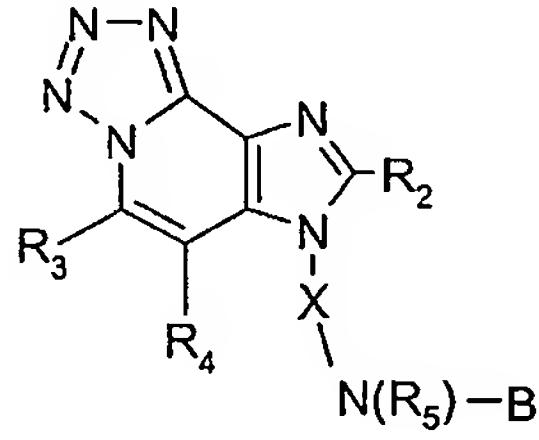


10

VI

wherein B, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 52; and

- (v-b) subjecting the compound of the Formula VI to cyclization conditions, during step (v-a) or subsequent to the completion of step (v-a), to provide a compound of the Formula VII



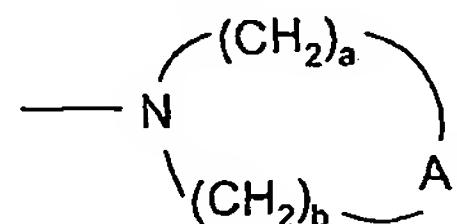
15

VII

wherein B, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and X are as defined in claim 52.

54. The process of claim 52, wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, X, Y and Z are independently selected as follows:

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> branched alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, and substituted cycloalkyl, or when R<sub>1</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> straight chain alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 4 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7;

10 R<sub>2</sub> is selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene-O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen and methyl;

R<sub>5</sub> is selected from hydrogen and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

X is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkenylene;

Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and

15 Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or R<sub>7</sub> is joined with R<sub>1</sub> as described above.

55. The process of claim 54, wherein

20 R<sub>1</sub> is selected from methyl, phenyl, and cyclohexyl, or R<sub>1</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>7</sub> to form a morpholino ring;

R<sub>2</sub> is selected from hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, *sec*-butyl, isobutyl, *tert*-butyl, 2-methoxyethyl, ethoxymethyl, and cyclopropylmethyl;

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are methyl or R<sub>3</sub> is methyl and R<sub>4</sub> is hydrogen;

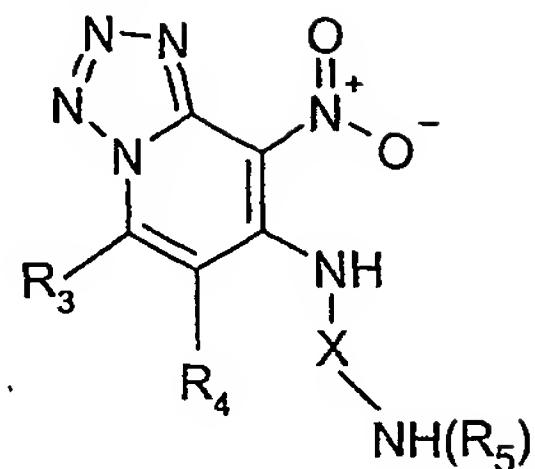
25 R<sub>5</sub> is hydrogen;

X is selected from ethylene, propylene, and butylene;

Y is selected from -CO- and -SO<sub>2</sub>-; and

Z is selected from a bond and -N(R<sub>7</sub>)- wherein R<sub>7</sub> is hydrogen or R<sub>7</sub> along with the nitrogen atom to which it is attached is joined with R<sub>1</sub> to form a morpholino ring.

## 56. A compound of the Formula XIV



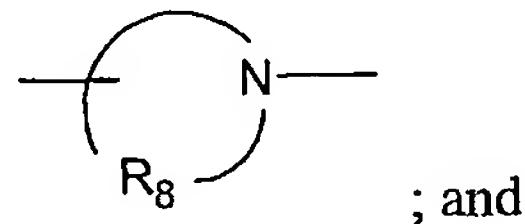
XIV

wherein

5        X is alkylene or alkenylene;

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino and alkylthio;

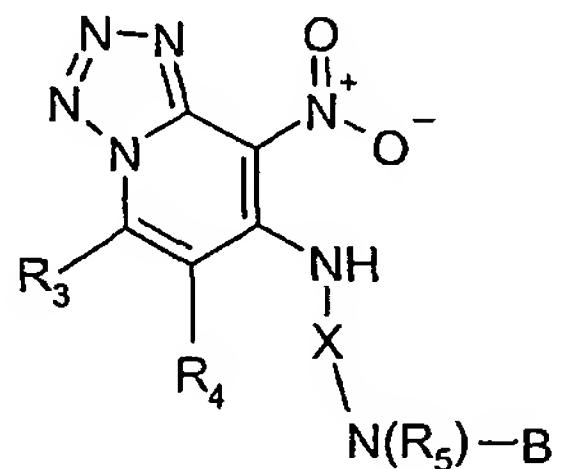
R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure



10       ; and

R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene.

## 57. A compound of the Formula IV



15       IV

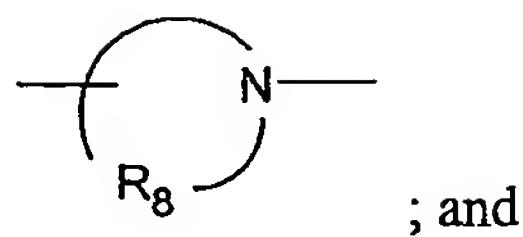
wherein

B is a protecting group for the -N(R<sub>5</sub>)- amino group;

X is alkylene or alkenylene;

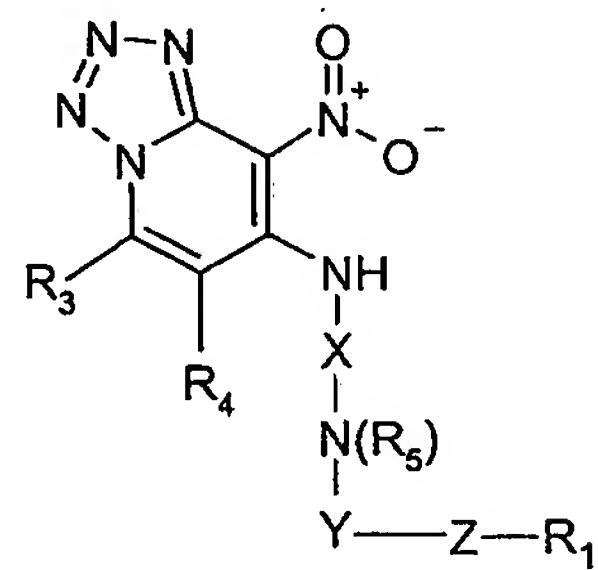
R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino and alkylthio;

R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure



R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene.

58. A compound of the Formula XV



5

XV

wherein

X is alkylene or alkenylene;

Y is -CO-, -CS-, or -SO<sub>2</sub>-;

10 Z is a bond, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-CO-, or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-SO<sub>2</sub>-; with the proviso that when Y is -SO<sub>2</sub>- then Z is a bond or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-;

R<sub>1</sub> is aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, alkyl or alkenyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:

-alkyl;

15 -alkenyl;

-aryl;

-heteroaryl;

-heterocyclyl;

-substituted cycloalkyl;

20 -substituted aryl;

-substituted heteroaryl;

-substituted heterocyclyl;

-O-alkyl;

-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;

25 -O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;

-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;

5 -COOH;  
-CO-O-alkyl;  
-CO-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;

10 -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;

15 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-aryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted aryl;

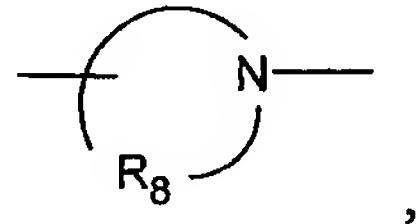
20 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-heteroaryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted heteroaryl;  
-P(O)(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>;  
-N<sub>3</sub>;  
-halogen;

25 -(haloalkyl);  
-(haloalkoxy);  
-CO-haloalkyl;  
-CO-haloalkoxy;  
-NO<sub>2</sub>;

30 -CN;  
-OH;  
-SH; and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

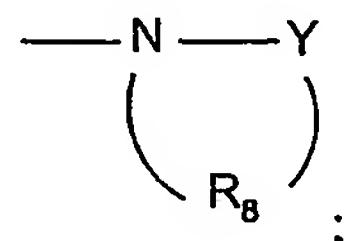
$R_3$  and  $R_4$  are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino and alkylthio;

$R_5$  is H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl, or when  $R_5$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl, then  $R_5$  can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure



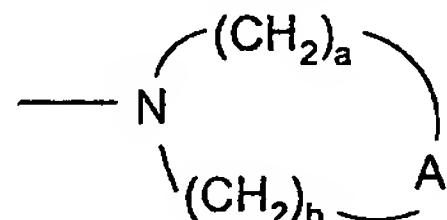
5

or when  $R_5$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl,  $R_1$  is alkyl, and Z is a bond, then  $R_5$  and  $R_1$  can join to form a ring having the structure



each  $R_6$  is independently H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl;

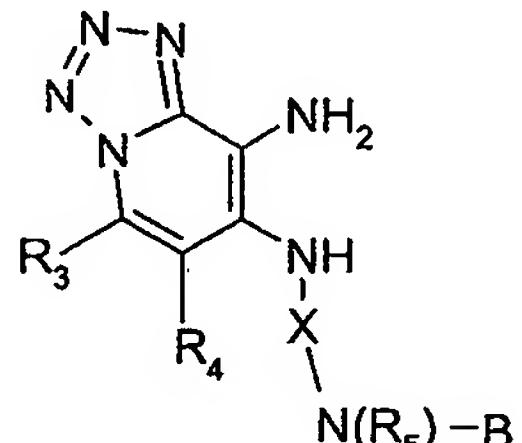
10  $R_7$  is H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or when  $R_1$  is alkyl, Z is  $-N(R_7)-$ , and  $R_7$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms,  $R_7$  and  $R_1$  can join to form a ring having the structure



15 wherein A is selected from  $-O-$ ,  $-S(O)_{0-2}-$ ,  $-N(R_6)-$ , and  $-CH_2-$ ; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 6 with the proviso that  $a + b$  is less than or equal to 7; and

$R_8$  is  $C_{3-8}$  alkylene.

59. A compound of the Formula V



20

V

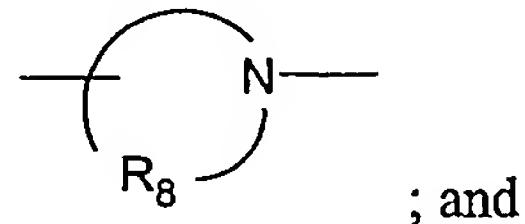
wherein

B is a protecting group for the  $-N(R_5)-$  amino group;

X is alkylene or alkenylene;

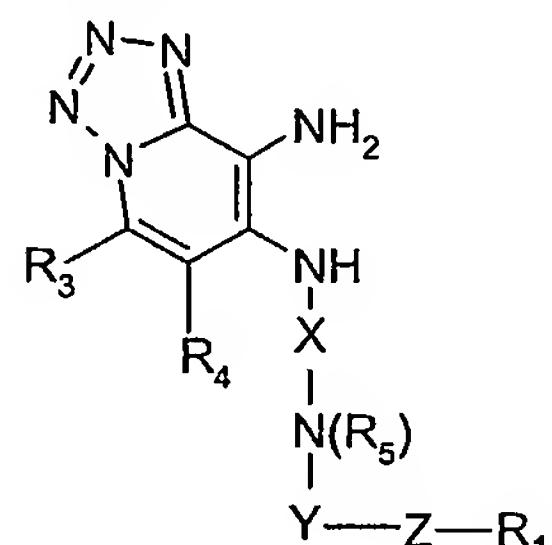
R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino and alkylthio;

R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure



R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene.

60. A compound of the Formula XVI



XVI

wherein

X is alkylene or alkenylene;

Y is -CO-, -CS-, or -SO<sub>2</sub>-;

Z is a bond, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-CO-, or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-SO<sub>2</sub>-; with the proviso that when Y is -SO<sub>2</sub>- then Z is a bond or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-;

R<sub>1</sub> is aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, alkyl or alkenyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:

-alkyl;

20 -alkenyl;

-aryl;

-heteroaryl;

-heterocyclyl;

-substituted cycloalkyl;

25 -substituted aryl;

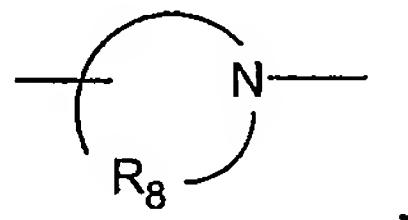
-substituted heteroaryl;

-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-O-alkyl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;  
5 -O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-COOH;  
10 -CO-O-alkyl;  
-CO-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;  
15 -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
20 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-aryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted aryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-heteroaryl;  
25 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted heteroaryl;  
-P(O)(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>;  
-N<sub>3</sub>;  
-halogen;  
-haloalkyl;  
30 -haloalkoxy;  
-CO-haloalkyl;  
-CO-haloalkoxy;

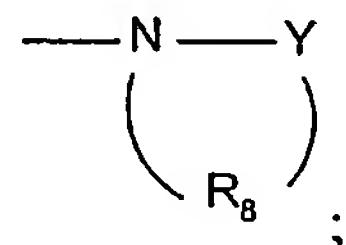
-NO<sub>2</sub>;  
 -CN;  
 -OH;  
 -SH; and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

5        R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino and alkylthio;

      R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure

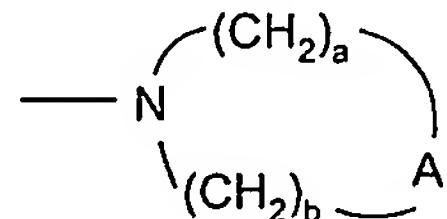


10      or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, and Z is a bond, then R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



      each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

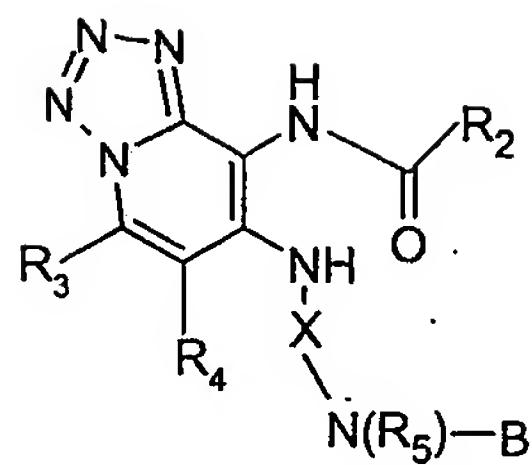
15      R<sub>7</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or when R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



20      wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 6 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7; and

      R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene.

61.     A compound of the Formula VI



wherein

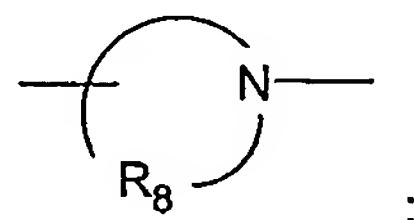
- B is a protecting group for the -N(R<sub>5</sub>)- amino group;
- 5      X is alkylene or alkenylene;
- R<sub>2</sub> is selected from:
  - hydrogen;
  - alkyl;
  - alkenyl;
  - 10     -aryl;
  - substituted aryl;
  - heteroaryl;
  - substituted heteroaryl;
  - alkylene-O-alkyl;
  - 15     -alkylene-S-alkyl;
  - alkylene-O-aryl;
  - alkylene-S-aryl;
  - alkylene-O-alkenyl;
  - alkylene-S- alkenyl; and
  - 20     -alkyl or alkenyl substituted by one or more substituents selected from:
    - OH;
    - halogen;
    - N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
    - 25     -CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
    - CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
    - SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;
    - NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

- NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
- NR<sub>6</sub>-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
- CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
- CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;
- 5 -N<sub>3</sub>;
- aryl;
- substituted aryl;
- heteroaryl;
- substituted heteroaryl;
- 10 -heterocyclyl;
- substituted heterocyclyl;
- CO-aryl;
- CO-(substituted aryl);
- CO-heteroaryl; and
- 15 -CO-(substituted heteroaryl);

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino and alkylthio;

R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure

20

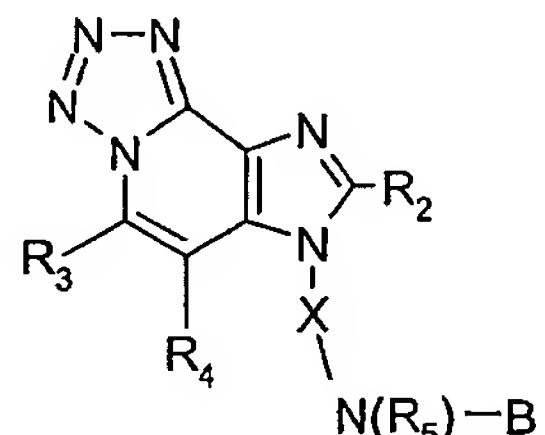


each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl; and

R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene.

62. A compound of the Formula VII

25



VII



-substituted aryl;

-heteroaryl;

-substituted heteroaryl;

-heterocyclyl;

-substituted heterocyclyl;

-CO-aryl;

-CO-(substituted aryl);

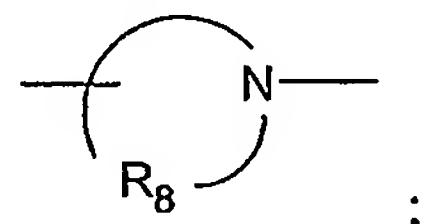
-CO-heteroaryl; and

-CO-(substituted heteroaryl);

5

10  $R_3$  and  $R_4$  are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino and alkylthio;

$R_5$  is H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl, or when  $R_5$  is  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl, then  $R_5$  can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure

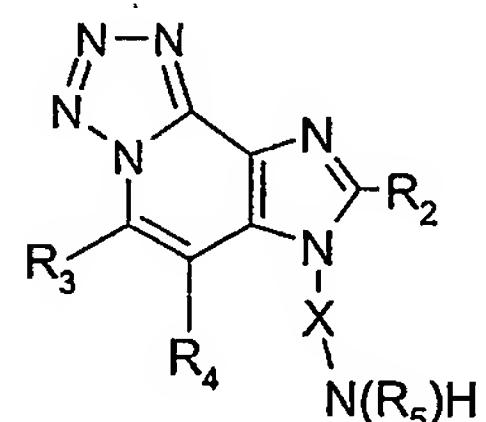


15

each  $R_6$  is independently H or  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl; and

$R_8$  is  $C_{3-8}$  alkylene.

63. A compound of the Formula VIII



20

VIII

wherein

X is alkylene or alkenylene;

$R_2$  is selected from:

-hydrogen;

-alkyl;

-alkenyl;

-aryl;

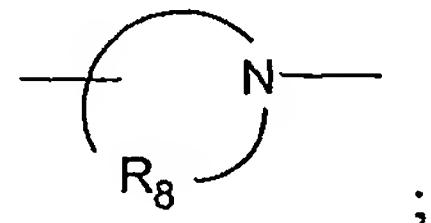
25

-substituted aryl;  
-heteroaryl;  
-substituted heteroaryl;  
-alkylene-O-alkyl;  
5 -alkylene-S-alkyl;  
-alkylene-O-aryl;  
-alkylene-S-aryl;  
-alkylene-O-alkenyl;  
-alkylene-S-alkenyl; and  
10 -alkyl or alkenyl substituted by one or more substituents selected from:  
-OH;  
-halogen;  
-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
15 -CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
20 -NR<sub>6</sub>-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;  
-N<sub>3</sub>;  
-aryl;  
25 -substituted aryl;  
-heteroaryl;  
-substituted heteroaryl;  
-heterocyclyl;  
-substituted heterocyclyl;  
30 -CO-aryl;  
-CO-(substituted aryl);  
-CO-heteroaryl; and

-CO-(substituted heteroaryl);

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino and alkylthio;

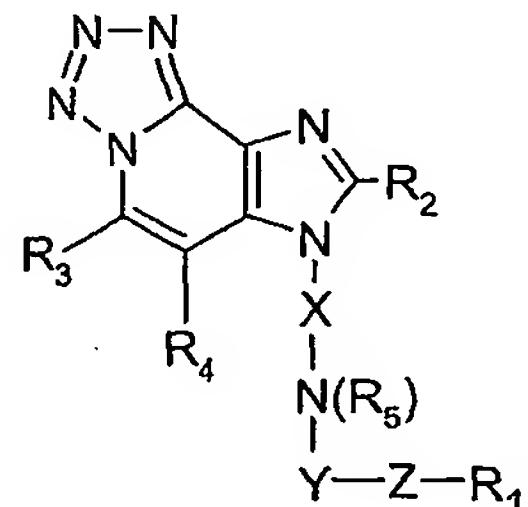
5       R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure



each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl; and

R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene.

10      64. A compound of the Formula XI



XI

wherein

X is alkylene or alkenylene;

15      Y is -CO-, -CS-, or -SO<sub>2</sub>-;

Z is a bond, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-CO-, or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-SO<sub>2</sub>-; with the proviso that when Y is -SO<sub>2</sub>- then Z is a bond or -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-;

R<sub>1</sub> is aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, alkyl or alkenyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from:

20      -alkyl;

-alkenyl;

-aryl;

-heteroaryl;

-heterocyclyl;

25      -substituted cycloalkyl;

-substituted aryl;

-substituted heteroaryl;  
-substituted heterocyclyl;  
-O-alkyl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;  
5 -O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
-O-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
10 -COOH;  
-CO-O-alkyl;  
-CO-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-alkyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-aryl;  
15 -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted aryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heteroaryl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-heterocyclyl;  
-S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-substituted heterocyclyl;  
20 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-O-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-alkyl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-aryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted aryl;  
25 -(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-heteroaryl;  
-(alkylene)<sub>0-1</sub>-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-substituted heteroaryl;  
-P(O)(O-alkyl)<sub>2</sub>;  
-N<sub>3</sub>;  
-halogen;  
30 -haloalkyl;  
-haloalkoxy;  
-CO-haloalkyl;

-CO-haloalkoxy;

-NO<sub>2</sub>;

-CN;

-OH;

5 -SH; and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

R<sub>2</sub> is selected from:

-hydrogen;

-alkyl;

-alkenyl;

10 -aryl;

-substituted aryl;

-heteroaryl;

-substituted heteroaryl;

-alkylene-O-alkyl;

15 -alkylene-S-alkyl;

-alkylene-O-aryl;

-alkylene-S-aryl;

-alkylene-O-alkenyl;

-alkylene-S- alkenyl; and

20 -alkyl or alkenyl substituted by one or more substituents selected

from:

-OH;

-halogen;

-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;

25 -CO-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;

-CS-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;

-SO<sub>2</sub>-N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>;

-NR<sub>6</sub>-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

-NR<sub>6</sub>-CS-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

30 -NR<sub>6</sub>-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

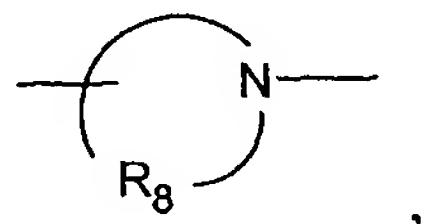
-CO-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

-CO-O-C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

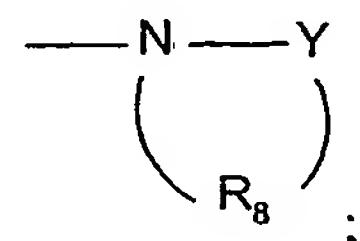
-N<sub>3</sub>;  
 -aryl;  
 -substituted aryl;  
 -heteroaryl;  
 5 -substituted heteroaryl;  
 -heterocycll;  
 -substituted heterocycll;  
 -CO-aryl;  
 -CO-(substituted aryl);  
 10 -CO-heteroaryl; and  
 -CO-(substituted heteroaryl);

R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, halogen, alkoxy, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino and alkylthio;

15 R<sub>5</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, then R<sub>5</sub> can join with a carbon atom of X to form a ring having the structure

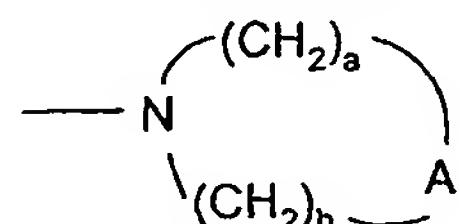


or when R<sub>5</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, and Z is a bond, then R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



20 each R<sub>6</sub> is independently H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl;

R<sub>7</sub> is H or C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, or when R<sub>1</sub> is alkyl, Z is -N(R<sub>7</sub>)-, and R<sub>7</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl which may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>1</sub> can join to form a ring having the structure



25 wherein A is selected from -O-, -S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, -N(R<sub>6</sub>)-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-; and a and b are independently integers from 1 to 6 with the proviso that a + b is less than or equal to 7; and

R<sub>8</sub> is C<sub>3-8</sub> alkylene.